

M. Jagg. V

O. B. S.

195-199

487-493

THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH
GRAMMAR

INTERMEDIATE EXERCISES IN FRENCH COMPOSITION

By C. W. BELL, M.A. With Vocabulary. Crown 8vo,
112 pp., limp cloth, 1s.

This course provides a large number of straightforward sentences for translation into French, exemplifying practically the whole of the grammar. To make the book complete a large number of carefully arranged pieces of continuous prose are added.

TESTS IN FRENCH COMPOSITION AND GRAMMAR

For Intermediate Pupils. By J. M. MILNE, M.A.,
D.-ès-L. Small crown 8vo, 64 pp., sewed, 8d. KEY,
for Teachers only, 2s. 9d. net, post free.

This book contains a series of fifty tests consisting of
(a) Easy short connected prose extracts for translation
into French; (b) Grammatical questions; (c) Sentences for
translation.

ADVANCED TESTS IN FRENCH COMPOSITION AND GRAMMAR

For Senior Pupils. By J. M. MILNE, M.A., D.-ès-L.
Small crown 8vo, 96 pp., cloth limp, 1s. KEY, for
Teachers only, 3s. 9d. net, post free.

This work is on the same lines as the author's *Intermediate Tests*, which was an immediate success. It contains fifty passages for translation into French, 450 graded sentences covering the whole range of French syntax, and 100 questions and tests in grammar.

GRADUATED TESTS IN FRENCH COMPOSITION AND GRAMMAR

By J. E. MANSION. Small crown 8vo, 64 pp., sewed, 8d.
KEY, for Teachers only, 3s. 9d. net, post free.

Intended to provide a change of material wherever the two sets of Tests shown above have been in use for some time. The arrangement is the same, but the matter is more steeply graded.

Harrap's Modern Language Series

THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

C. W. BELL M.A.

LATE PRINCIPAL MODERN LANGUAGE MASTER
KING'S SCHOOL CANTERBURY



GEORGE G. HARRAP & COMPANY LTD.
LONDON BOMBAY SYDNEY

First published September 1914
by GEORGE G. HARRAP & Co.
39-41 Parker Street, Kingsway, London, W.C.2
Reprinted: December 1917; September 1919; April 1921;
August 1923; September 1924; August 1925;
May 1927

PREFACE

THIS Grammar has been in use at the King's School, Canterbury, for the last six years, and the present edition is the outcome of the experience gained in teaching during that period. In these days of New Methods and Direct Methods the appearance of a solid grammar like this may call for some apology, but I believe there are still many teachers left who think that a study of Grammar is stimulating to the intelligence, and that in the study of French there is more to aim at than the mere facility of asking your neighbour politely to pass the butter; that grammar and drill are not yet negligible quantities in education; and that volplaning is pleasant and graceful only if your machine is in good working order.

The instances and examples of the various grammatical rules, etc., are purposely kept as simple and as conversational as possible. I hope I have been successful in my chapter on Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, which I have always found to be the learner's greatest difficulty, and I trust I may be pardoned for inventing a new case, the Prepositional. The adoption of various kinds of type practically divides the grammar into "elementary" and "advanced," and it is hoped that those who know their way well about the book will find it useful in the rendering of English into French prose. I have attempted, in Chapter XXX, to show the construction

6 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

after verbs in a less dry and formal way than is found in most grammars. The sentences in the Revision Exercises are, with very few exceptions, designedly simple, so that they may help pupils rather than discourage them.

C. W. BELL

May 1914

CONTENTS

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| I. ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS, ETC. | 9 |
| II. THE ARTICLE | 12 |
| III. FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES | 16 |
| IV. COMPOUND NOUNS | 19 |
| V. FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS | 21 |
| POSITION OF ADJECTIVES | 26 |
| VI. GENDER OF NOUNS | 28 |
| VII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES | 32 |
| VIII. THE NUMERALS | 35 |
| IX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS | 40 |
| CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS | 41 |
| DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS | 44 |
| X. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS | 47 |
| XI. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS | 49 |
| XII. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS | 54 |
| XIII. INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS | 57 |
| XIV. THE VERB: MOODS, TENSES, ETC. | 63 |
| FORMATION OF TENSES | 64 |
| XV. THE AUXILIARY VERBS, AVOIR, ÊTRE | 65 |
| XVI. THE REGULAR VERBS CONJUGATED | 69 |
| NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION | 71 |
| XVII. THE PASSIVE VOICE CONJUGATED | 73 |

8 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XVIII. THE REFLEXIVE VERB CONJUGATED | 74 |
| XIX. IMPERSONAL VERBS | 77 |
| XX. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: SOME PECU- LIARITIES | 78 |
| XXI. THE AUXILIARY VERBS | 80 |
| FAIRE | 83 |
| XXII. THE TENSES AND PARTICIPLES | 85 |
| THE CONDITIONAL | 87 |
| PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND | 88 |
| PAST PARTICIPLE | 90 |
| XXIII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD | 92 |
| XXIV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD | 96 |
| XXV. IRREGULAR VERBS | 100 |
| XXVI. ADVERBS | 107 |
| XXVII. PREPOSITIONS | 119 |
| XXVIII. CONJUNCTIONS | 128 |
| XXIX. INTERJECTIONS | 131 |
| XXX. CONSTRUCTIONS AFTER CERTAIN VERBS (IN ALPHA- BETICAL ORDER) | 132 |
| REVISION EXERCISES | 138 |
| VOCABULARY TO THE REVISION EXERCISES | 159 |
| INDEX | 167 |

The Essentials of French Grammar

I. ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS, ETC.

1. The French **Alphabet** is the same as the English. The letter W, though not strictly French, is used in the case of foreign words introduced into the language, *e.g.* wagons-lits, *sleeping-carriages*.

2. The following are written with a **small initial letter** (*minuscule*) in French, contrary to the English custom :

- (a) Days of the week,
- (b) Months,
- (c) Seasons,
- (d) Points of the compass,
- (e) Adjectives of nationality,
- (f) The pronoun *je*, unless beginning a sentence ;

e.g. *Le dimanche ; au mois de janvier ; un journal français ; eh bien ! j'irai à Paris demain.*

Le Français, the Frenchman, however, being a noun, is written with a capital (*majuscule*).

3. Punctuation signs are :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| , la virgule. | ! le point d'exclamation. |
| . le point. | " " les guillemets. |
| ; le point et virgule. | () la parenthèse. |
| : les deux points. | — le tiret. |
| ? le point d'interrogation. | - le trait d'union. |

4. The **Cedilla** (*la cédille*), placed under *c*, gives it the sound of *ss* before *a*, *o*, *u* :—*ça, avançons, reçut*.

5. The **Diæresis** (*le tréma*) shows that two vowels coming together are to be pronounced separately: *Noël*, *Saül*, *Moïse*. Contrast *oui* (yes) and *ouï* (heard); *je hais* (I hate) and *je haïs* (I hated).

6. The **Hyphen** (*le trait d'union*) connects words or parts of words grammatically united, e.g. compound nouns, compound numerals, verbs and pronouns standing after them, etc.:—*dix-sept*, *arc-en-ciel*, *aura-t-il*, *levez-vous*, *celui-ci*.

It is used when a single word is divided at the end of a line. French words are divided so that each syllable begins with a consonant if possible:—*a-mu-sant*, *prin-ci-paux*.

[The use of the hyphen in compound nouns, in compound numerals, and between the verb and pronoun (interrogative form) is no longer obligatory.]¹

7. The **Apostrophe** (*l'apostrophe*) marks the elision of vowels before other vowels or *h* mute:—*l'ami*, *j'avais*. Before an aspirate *h* there is no elision:—*le héros*.

In writing French prose see that you never end a line with an apostrophe.

8. **Elision.** The following are subject to elision:

1. *Je, me, te, se, le, la, ce, que, ne, de, jusque*. But *je, le, la, ce* are not elided when standing after the verb:—*ai-je entendu? est-ce elle? faites-le entrer*.

2. *Si* (=if), only before *il, ils*: thus *s'il, s'ils*.

3. *Lorsque, quoique, puisque*, before personal pronouns and *on, un, une*. *Presque*, in *presqu'île*, peninsula. *Quelque*, in *quelqu'un, quelqu'une*. *Entre*, in composition:—*entr'acte, entr'ouvrir*.

[Such words may now be written *entracte, entrouvrir*, etc.]

Obs. i. No elision before *onze, onzième, oui, yacht, ouate, uhlan*.

ii. In *grand'mère, grand'rue, grand'messe, grand'route*, and a few more, the apostrophe was inserted by the grammarians of the seventeenth century who wrongly considered that the feminine termination *e* had dropped out in these words. *Grand*, however, was originally masc. and fem., as, in O.F., adjectives derived from Latin adjectives of two terminations retained the same form for both genders.

¹ According to the "Tolérances" issued by Authority in 1901. The most important of these are noted as they occur.

9. Liaison is the sounding of the final consonant of certain words before another word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. It is used when the second word is closely connected grammatically with the preceding—*e.g.*

- (a) Article and noun : *les* hommes (*lé-zommes*).
- (b) Adjective and noun : *un* saint *homme*.
- (c) Pronoun and verb : *ils* ont.
- (d) Preposition and noun (pronoun) : *après* elle.

Liaison is not practised in conversation more than is absolutely necessary to avoid ambiguity or to avoid a clumsy hiatus : *e.g.* but for liaison *ils étaient* would sound like *il était*.

. The *t* of *et* is never sounded.

Obs. i. A euphonic *t* is inserted in the 3rd person singular of certain tenses of the verb to avoid a hiatus. *E.g.* aime-t-il ; donnera-t-il.

ii. There is no liaison in the case of the final *n* of a noun : *e.g.* ce poisson est mauvais : but liaison occurs after *un, on, en, mon, ton, son, bien, rien* : *e.g.* un œuf, mon ami, bien entendu.

iii. Final *d, g, f, s, x* are sounded as shown in the following :—
 Quand on a—quan-ton-na. Sang et eau—san-ké-eau. Neuf heures—neu-veures. Les autres—lé-zautres. Dix ans—di-zans. J'en ai dix—j'en-nai-diss.

10. Accents.

- (a) Acute (*aigu*) :—*aveuglément, donné*.
- (b) Grave (*grave*) :—*mène, où, déjà*.
- (c) Circumflex (*circonflexe*) :—*tête, âpre, gîte, mûr*.

The *Acute* stands over *e* only, the *Grave* over *a, e, u*, the *Circumflex* over all vowels.

Obs. i. The acute and circumflex accents often represent the Latin *s* or other contraction :—*maître* from *magistrum*, *été* from *æstatem*, *mûr* from *maturum*, etc.

ii. The grave accent is placed over an *e* when separated by a consonant from a mute *e* :—*espèrent, lèverai ; règne, mètre, etc.*

iii. The following should be remembered :

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>la</i> , the, <i>là</i> , there ; | <i>du</i> , of the, <i>dû</i> (from <i>devoir</i>), owed ; |
| <i>ça</i> , that, <i>çà</i> , there ; | <i>mur</i> , wall, <i>mûr</i> , ripe ; |
| <i>des</i> , of the, <i>dès</i> , from, <i>dés</i> , dice ; | <i>cru</i> (from <i>croire</i>), <i>crû</i> (from <i>croître</i>) ; |
| <i>ou</i> , or, <i>où</i> , where ; | <i>près</i> , near, <i>prés</i> , meadows. |
| <i>sur</i> , on, <i>sûr</i> , sure ; | |

iv. Accents do not generally stand on capital letters. Capital *E*, however, usually takes the accent.

II. THE ARTICLE

11. I. The Definite Article. *The.*

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Both Genders.</i> |
| <i>The</i> Le cheval. | La jument. | Les pères, mères. |
| <i>Of the</i> Du chien. | De la vache. | Des frères, sœurs. |
| <i>To the</i> Au chat. | A la souris. | Aux fils, filles. |

De l' } are used for { *Du* } before a vowel or *h* mute :
 A l' } { *Au* }

Thus :—De l'enfant, à l'homme.

Obs. i. In old French *en les* coalesced as *ès* (the *s* is sounded). The form still survives in Bachelier *ès* lettres, *ès* sciences, etc.

ii. There is of course no contraction of *de le*, *de les*, *à le*, *à les* into *du*, *des*, etc., when *de* and *à* as prepositions govern an Infinitive preceded by the personal pronouns *le*, *les*. *E.g.* Il se mit à le suivre. —Je vous prie de les copier.

12. II. The Indefinite Article. *A, an.*

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Both Genders.</i> |
| Un mouton. | Une brebis. | Des bœufs. |
| D'un lion. | D'une lionne. | A un roi. A une reine. |

13. III. The Partitive Article. *Some, any.*

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Both Genders.</i> |
| Du pain. | De la viande. | Des livres, pommes. |
| De l'argent. | | |

Some, any, are frequently omitted in English: only in exceptional cases can the partitive article be omitted in French. As—We eat meat, they drink wine, *nous mangeons de la viande, ils boivent du vin.*

14. *De* alone stands for the Partitive Article

i. In a negative expression. *E.g.* Je n'ai pas d'argent, *I have no (not any) money.*

2. If the adjective precedes the noun. *E.g.* Il fait de grands progrès, *he makes great progress.*

But if the adjective and noun form but one idea, *du, de la, des* are used. *E.g.* Des jeunes gens, *youths.*

It is, however, more in accordance with modern French custom to place *du, de la*, before a *singular* noun preceded by an adjective, while *de* alone is preferred when the adjective+noun are in the *plural*. Thus—du bon pain, de la bonne viande, du vrai vin : de grosses mouches, de généreux amis, de terribles aventures.

Similarly when the noun is omitted. Thus—J'en ai trouvé de bons, *I have found some good ones.*—En avez-vous de nouveaux? *have you any new ones?*

15. Contrast:

(a) Je n'ai pas de plume, *I haven't a pen.*

Je n'ai pas une plume, *I haven't a single pen.*

(b) Il n'a pas mangé de pain, *he has eaten no bread (though it was there for him).*

Je ne veux pas manger de la viande, *I don't want to eat meat (I prefer fish).*

16. Any preposition other than *de* may stand before the Partitive Article. *E.g.* Avec du vin.—Par de dures paroles.—Après de longs efforts.

17. Adverbs and Nouns of Quantity are followed by De.

1. Beaucoup de vin, beaucoup de verres, *much wine, many glasses.*—Peu d'eau, *little water.*—Un peu de fromage, *a little cheese.*—Trop de sucre, *too much sugar.*

So with combien? *how much, how many?* assez, *enough*; autant, tant, *so much, so many*; plus, *more*; le plus, *most*; moins, *less, fewer*; le moins, *least*; que, *how many! what a lot of!* (See § 251.)

[Caution—do not use *si beaucoup, trop beaucoup* for *so much, too much.*]

2. Un régiment de soldats.—Une poignée d'hommes.—Une bouteille d'encre.

Of course one would say, *e.g.* j'ai corrigé beaucoup *des* fautes que vous avez faites: un régiment *des* soldats de la

14 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

garde : because *fautes* and *soldats* are not partitive but determinative—the faults, the soldiers.

Obs. i. **Bien, encore, la plupart**, require *du, de la, des* (after *bien, encore*, the article is partitive : after *la plupart* it is determinative). *E.g.* *Bien des gens, many people.*—*Encore du mouton, more mutton.*—*La plupart des hommes, most men.*

ii. An Adjective after *quelque chose, rien, quoi, ce qui, ce que, ceci, cela*, requires *de*. *E.g.* *Quelque chose de bon, something good.*—*Rien de nouveau, nothing new.*—*Quoi de nouveau?*—*Tout ce qu'il y a de beau.*—*Cela de particulier.*

iii. Notice the partitive *de* in :—*Demandez de ses nouvelles, ask after him.*—*Prenez de ce vin, take some of this wine.*

18. The Article, definite, indefinite, and partitive, and partitive *de*, are **repeated** with each word. Thus—*Un homme et une femme distribuait des fruits et des gâteaux aux garçons et aux jeunes filles.*—*Tant de dames et de messieurs.*

INSERTION OR OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE

(A general contrast between the English and French use.)

19. The Definite Article is required :

1. With Abstract Nouns, Arts, Sciences, Virtues, Metals, and the like, or words denoting a whole Class (usually omitted in English).

E.g. *L'union fait la force, unity is strength.*

Les poissons sont des créatures muettes.

L'hiver approche.

On lui enseigne les mathématiques et la chimie.

2. With Parts of the Body (English, possessive adjective or indefinite article).

E.g. *Il a la barbe blanche, he has a white beard, or his beard is white.*

Le pied lui manqua, his foot slipped.

Il a mal à la tête, he has a headache, his head aches.

3. With Titles, or proper names preceded by an adjective (omitted in English). *E.g.* *Le cardinal Richelieu.*—*Le petit Henri.*

Obs. *Monsieur le duc, Monsieur le colonel*, etc., as the correct form of address. A soldier addresses his superior officer : *e.g.* *Oui, mon capitaine*, etc., *Yes, sir.*

4. Familiarly to express a vocative. *E.g.* Bon soir, la compagnie ! *good evening, everybody !—Allons ! la vieille, il faut vous décider !*

5. As a term of endearment (familiar). *E.g.* Elle avait toujours raison, la Ninette, *she was always right, was dear little Ninette.*

20. The Article is omitted :

1. In Apposition, or as Complement of *être, devenir*, and the like, the noun denoting the rank, status, etc., of the subject. *E.g.* Hélène, femme de Ménélas.—Il est devenu soldat.—Jean Bart était de Dunkerque, pays humide et froid.

2. In categories, lists, enumerations. *E.g.* Toute la foule, hommes, femmes, et enfants, allaient aussi le regarder.

3. After *Quel !* *E.g.* Quelle honte ! *what a shame !—Quel beau cheval !*

4. *Sans, avec, par*, stand before the noun without article and form an adverbial expression. Thus—Avec énergie, *energetically.*—Sans pitié, *pitilessly.*—Par accident, *accidentally.*

But if there is an adjective, the article must be inserted—*e.g.* avec une grande joie.

5. Sometimes the article is omitted with *jamais*. *E.g.* Je n'ai jamais vu joie plus grande.

6. In Proverbs. Pierre qui roule n'amasse pas mousse, *a rolling stone gathers no moss.*—Pauvreté n'est pas vice.

21. Special cases of Omission of Article. With the verb *Avoir* :

J'ai chaud, *I am hot.*

Tu as froid, *you are cold.*

Il a faim, *he is hungry.*

Nous avons soif, *we are thirsty.*

Vous avez raison, *you are right.*

Ils ont toujours tort, *they are always wrong.*

Avez-vous sommeil ? *are you sleepy ?*

Le bal aura lieu, *the ball will take place.*

Other phrases are :—Remuer ciel et terre.—Travailler nuit et jour.—Ayez soin de le faire.—Faites attention.—Par retour du courrier (*by return of post*).—Prenez garde.—Il reprit courage.—Prendre possession.—Faire fortune.—Faire peur.—Cela fait pitié.—Rendre compte.—Perdre patience.—Faire visite.—Nous étions fort bons amis.

22. The Article with Proper Nouns.

1. Of certain *names of persons* the article is an essential part, *e.g.* La Fontaine. Le Bon. Le Clerc. Le Maçon (*gen. de La Fontaine, de le Bon, etc.*).

16 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

2. With names of *Continents, Countries, Rivers, Mountains, Counties*, the article is generally used.—Nous partons pour la Suisse. Dans l'Asie. Sur les bords de la Tamise. Le Mont Blanc. Dans le Kent.

3. "In" with feminine names of *Countries, Continents, Provinces*, is *en*, without article—En Europe, en Italie, etc. But when the name is masculine, or in the plural, one must use *à* + definite article. Au Japon, aux États-Unis, aux Indes, and a few more.

4. Names of *Towns* do not take the article. *E.g.* La Tour de Londres.—Les grands hôtels de Paris. But in the case of *la Haye* (Eng. the Hague), *la Rochelle*, *la Mecque*, *le Caire*, and a few more, the article forms part of the name (*gen. de la Haye*, etc.).

5. *De* with names of *Countries* denoting *motion from*, requires no article, but when *possession* is implied, the article is inserted. Thus—Je vous ai fait venir d'Afrique.—Les solitudes de l'Afrique.—Les frontières de l'Europe et celles de l'Asie.

6. Note the phrases—Le roi d'Angleterre (and so with all similar titles)—L'armée d'Italie (*the army serving in Italy*)—Le Midi de la France (*the South of France*).

23. A few phrases :

Trois francs la livre, *three francs a pound*.—Quatre milles à l'heure, *four miles an hour*.—Deux fois par semaine, *twice a week*.—Le brave Jean ! *dear old John !*—Il agit en ami, *he acts as a friend*.—Une peinture à la Rembrandt, *i.e.* à la manière de R.—La Saint-Jean, *i.e.* la fête de saint Jean, *St John's Day*.

III. FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

24. 1. **General Rule.** Add **s** to the singular :—roi, *king*, rois ; méchant, *wicked*, méchants.

2. Words ending in **s, x, z** make no change in the plural :—bois, *wood*, bois ; heureux, *happy*, heureux ; nez, *nose*, nez.

3. Words ending in **au, eu**, add **x** :—eau, *water*, eaux ; beau, *handsome*, beaux ; jeu, *game*, jeux.

Obs. bleu makes *pl.* bleus ; feu, *deceased*, feus : feu, *fire*, feux ; landau, landaus.

4. Words in **al** change *al* into **aux** :—cheval, *horse*, chevaux; égal, *equal*, égaux.

The following nouns in *al* add *s* :

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| bal, <i>ball</i> . | chacal, <i>jackal</i> . | carnaval, <i>carnival</i> . |
| caul, <i>wart</i> . | régat, <i>feast</i> . | festival, <i>festival</i> . |

Plur. bals, etc.

Obs. A certain number of Adjectives ending in *al*, of which *fatal*, *final*, *naval*, *natal*, *glacial* are the commonest, form their plural by adding *s*.

5. Words in **ou** take **s** in the plural :—clou, *nail*, clous; mou, *soft*, mous. But the following seven nouns take *x* :

| | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| bijou, <i>jewel</i> . | chou, <i>cabbage</i> . | hibou, <i>owl</i> . | pou, <i>louse</i> . |
| caillou, <i>pebble</i> . | genou, <i>knee</i> . | joujou, <i>toy</i> . | |

Plural, bijoux, cailloux, etc.

6. Words in **ail** take **s** :—détail, *detail*, détails. But the following nouns change *ail* into *aux* to form the plural :

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| bail, <i>lease</i> . | soupirail, <i>air-hole</i> . | vitrail, <i>stained glass</i> |
| corail, <i>coral</i> . | travail, <i>work</i> . | window. |
| émaïl, <i>enamel</i> . | vantail, <i>folding door</i> . | |

Plural, baux, coraux, etc.

Obs. bétail, *cattle*, is a collective noun, always singular, but there is a plural noun, bestiaux, with much the same meaning.

25. Most Foreign Nouns take s. *E.g.* Des albums, spécimens, opéras, numéros, pensums, budgets, rails, jockeys, toasts, etc. But nouns of foreign origin not naturalised as French words are invariable : Des cicérone, des Te Deum, des Credo, des fac-similé, des Avé Maria, des post-scriptum, etc.

Proper Nouns are as a rule *invariable* : *E.g.* Chez les Smith, les Brown. Names of great families and dynasties are *variable*, as :—Les Césars, les Bourbons.

When names of authors, painters, etc., are used for their works, they become common nouns, and inflect in the plural : *e.g.* Vous collectionnez des Raphaëls, des Turners. —J'ai plusieurs Homères dans ma bibliothèque.

In phrases such as "men like Molière," one can say indifferently : les Molières, les Shakespeare, etc. : the usage is not fixed.

Indeclinable Words cannot inflect. With the English "ifs and ans," "the pros and cons," compare the French : les oui et les non, les pour et les contre.

26. Nouns with **double Plurals** :

Ciel : *sky*, (1) *cieux*, *heavens*, (2) *ciels*, *skies* (*in pictures*).

Œil : *eye*, (1) *yeux*, *eyes*, (2) in compounds, *œils-de-bœuf*, *oval windows*, *œils-de-chat*, *agate*, *cat's eyes*.

Aïeul : *grandfather*, (1) *aïeux*, *ancestors*, (2) *aïeuls*, *grandfathers*.

27. The following have **two meanings** in the plural, the second meaning given belonging to the plural only :

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| lettre, <i>letter</i> , | pl. 1. letters. | lumière, <i>light</i> , | pl. 1. lights. |
| | 2. literature. | | 2. knowledge. |
| ciseau, <i>chisel</i> , | „ 1. chisels. | lunette, <i>telescope</i> , | „ 1. telescopes. |
| | 2. scissors. | | 2. spectacles. |
| défense, <i>defence</i> , | „ 1. defences. | être, <i>being</i> , | „ 1. beings. |
| | 2. tusks. | | 2. parts of a house. |
| fer, <i>iron</i> , | „ 1. irons. | troupe, <i>band</i> , | „ 1. bands, droves. |
| | 2. fetters. | | 2. troops. |
| gage, <i>pledge</i> , | „ 1. pledges. | tablette, <i>shelf</i> , | „ 1. shelves. |
| | 2. wages. | | 2. writing-tablets. |
| vacance, <i>vacancy</i> , | „ 1. vacancies. | assise, <i>course</i> , | „ 1. courses. |
| | 2. holidays. | (<i>in masonry</i>), | 2. assizes. |
| état, <i>state, condition</i> . | pl. <i>states</i> (political), | les états-généraux, les | |
| | | États-Unis. | |
| aboi, <i>bark, barking</i> . | „ aux abois = <i>at bay</i> . | | |
| effet, <i>effect</i> . | „ <i>effects</i> , in the sense of <i>goods</i> . | | |

28. Some Nouns are **not used in the Plural**, *e.g.*, names of metals, arts, sciences, abstract nouns. *N.B.*—La politique, *politics* ; la tactique, *tactics* ; la physique, *physics*. Un pantalon is a *pair of trousers* ; un caleçon, a *pair of drawers* ; un pain, a *loaf* ; des pains, *loaves*.

29. Some Nouns have **no Singular**—ancêtres (*ancestors*), annales, décombres (*rubbish*), fiançailles (*betrothal*), mathématiques, mœurs (*manners*), vêpres (*vespers*), etc.

30. Témoin, unless used personally as a *witness*, *second*, is invariable. Thus—Je vous prends tous à témoin.—Témoin les trente femmes blessées à Amiens. *But* Les magistrats ont interrogé quelques témoins.

IV. COMPOUND NOUNS

31. Plural of Compound Nouns.

1. Compound Nouns which by usage have become simple words are treated as such. *E.g.* portemanteau, contrevent (*shutter*), gendarme, pourboire (*tip*), etc. *Plural*, portemanteaux, etc.

The following, however, though written as simple words, require the plural in both component elements :

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Monsieur. | Messieurs. |
| Mademoiselle. | Mesdemoiselles. |
| Madame. | Mesdames. |
| Monseigneur. | Messeigneurs. |
| Bonhomme. | Bonshommes. |
| Gentilhomme. ¹ | Gentilshommes. |

Grand'mère (and the like²), *plur.* grand'mères ; but grand-père (see below, No. 2), grands-pères.

2. The following are the various kinds of composition of nouns joined together by a hyphen, together with the rule as to the formation of their plural :

| <i>Nouns Compounded of</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Examples.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) Noun + Noun | ——s——s | Chat-tigre, chats-tigres. |
| (b) Noun + Adjective | ——s——s | coffre-fort, coffres-forts. |
| (c) Noun + Preposition + Noun | —s— —— | arc-en-ciel, arcs-en-ciel. |
| Noun (+ Prep. understood) + Noun | ——s—— | timbre-poste, timbres-poste. |
| (d) Verb ³ + Noun | —— ——s | tire-bouchon, tire-bouchons. |
| (e) Prep. or Adv. + Noun | —— ——s | avant-coureur, avant-coueurs. |
| (f) Indeclinable Words | —— —— | on-dit, des on-dit. |

¹ Gentilhomme = a nobleman. A gentleman is monsieur.

² Such as—grand'tante, grand'maman, grand'messe, grand'route, grand'rue. (See § 8. *Obs.* ii.)

³ Commonest verbs are tire, passe, garde, porte.

Obs. i. About the plural of words in (*d*), **Verb+Noun**, it is difficult to lay down hard and fast rules; a little reflection will generally decide whether or not the noun should take the plural (the verb never does), *e.g.* :

abat-jour, *lamp shade* (une chose qui) abat (le) jour, *pl.* des abat-jour;
porte-monnaie, *purse* (une chose qui) porte (de la) monnaie, *pl.* des porte-monnaie.

So also casse-tête, prie-Dieu, gagne-pain, etc.

On the other hand, the noun sometimes takes the *s* even in the singular if it contains the idea of plurality :—*e.g.* un porte-clefs, *turn-key* (homme qui) porte (beaucoup de) clefs, *pl.* des porte-clefs; essuie-mains, *towel*, etc.

ii. In compounds of **garde** denoting a *person*, *garde* takes an *s*; denoting a *thing*, no *s*;—*e.g.* garde-chasse, *gamekeeper*, des gardes-chasse (= gardiens de la chasse). But garde-boue, *mud-guard*, (chose qui) garde (contre la) boue, *pl.* des garde-boue.

[Most Compound Nouns may now be written as one word without hyphen, and form their plural according to ordinary rules.]

32. Examples of Compound Nouns, normal or peculiar :

Singular.

chef-lieu, *county-town*,
cerf-volant, *kite*,
ver-à-soie, *silk-worm*,
passe-partout, *master-key*,
garde-fou, *hand-rail*,
rouge-gorge, *red-breast*,
entr'acte, *interlude*,
chou-fleur, *cauliflower*,
état-major, *staff (military)*,
chef-d'œuvre, *masterpiece*,
réveille-matin, *alarum*,
essuie-mains, *towel*,
garde-manger, *meat-safe*,
sauf-conduit, *pass*,
après-midi, *afternoon*,

Plural.

chefs-lieux.
cerfs-volants.
vers-à-soie.
passe-partout.
garde-fous.
rouges-gorges.
entr'actes.
choux-fleurs.
états-majors.
chefs-d'œuvre.
réveille-matin.
essuie-mains.
garde-manger.
saufs-conduits.
après-midi.

Obs. Pied-à-terre, *night's lodging*; tête-à-tête, *conversation*; coq-à-l'âne, *cock and bull story*; sauve-qui-peut, *panic*, and such-like compounds cannot be inflected :—*pl.* des pied-à-terre, *i.e.* des (endroits où l'on met) pied à terre, etc.

33. Formation of Compound Nouns. French Nouns do not so readily lend themselves to simple juxtaposition of noun + noun as English and German nouns (*e.g.* footpath, door key, Kinderstube, Donnerwetter), but make use of the prepositions *de*, *en*, *d*.

3. Words in **gu** add **ë**: aigu, *shrill*, aiguë (thus the *u* sound of the masculine is preserved. Contrast *longue*).

Obs. i. Words in **u** merely add **e**, e.g. barbu, *bearded*, barbue.

ii. The past participles dû, crû, mû make due crue, mue.

4. Words ending in **c**. Four adjectives change *c* into *que*, and three adjectives change into *che*:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| public, <i>public</i> , publique. | blanc, <i>white</i> , blanche. |
| caduc, <i>decayed</i> , caduque. | franc, <i>frank</i> , franche. |
| franc, <i>Frankish</i> , franque. | sec, <i>dry</i> , sèche. |
| turc, <i>Turk</i> , turque. | |

Obs. grec, *Greek*, has feminine grecque.

5. Words in **f** change *f* into **ve**:—neuf, *new*, neuve; Juif, *Jew*, Juive.

6. Words in **x** change *x* into **se**:—jaloux, *jealous*, jalouse.

7. Words in **er** change into **ère**:—premier, *first*, première; épicier, *grocer*, épicière.

8. Words ending in **el**, **eil**; **en**, **on**; **as**, **os**; **et**, **ot**, double the *l*, *n*, *s*, *t*, and add *e*:

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| réel, <i>real</i> , réelle. | gras, <i>fat</i> , grasse. |
| pareil, <i>alike</i> , pareille. | gros, <i>big</i> , grosse. |
| ancien, <i>old</i> , ancienne. | muet, <i>dumb</i> , muette. |
| bon, <i>good</i> , bonne. | sot, <i>foolish</i> , sotté. |

Obs. i. Words in **al**, **an**, **il**, **in**, **ol**, simply add *e*:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| banal, <i>common</i> , banale. | cousin, <i>cousin</i> , cousine. |
| persan, <i>Persian</i> , persane. | espagnol, <i>Spanish</i> , espagnole. |
| vil, <i>vile</i> , vile. | |

ii. The following change **et** to **ète**:

| | | | |
|------------|------------|----------|---------|
| complet. | discret. | concret. | replet. |
| incomplet. | indiscret. | inquiét. | secret. |

9. Nouns and Adjectives ending in **eur**.

(a) Those formed from French verbs change *eur* into *euse*:—voyageur (voyager), *traveller*, voyageuse.

(b) Those formed from Latin nouns in *tor* change *teur* into *trice*:—acteur, *actor*, actrice.

(c) Comparatives in *eur* add *e*:—meilleur, *better*, meilleure; supérieur, supérieure.

(d) A few (8 or 9, legal or poetical) change into

eresse:—demandeur, *plaintiff*, demanderesse; vengeur, vengeresse.

Others are—bailleur, défendeur, enchanteur, pêcheur, vendeur (also -euse), chasseur (also -euse).

Obs. Leur and plusieurs do not add *e* in the feminine.

36. These **five adjectives** have a different form for the masculine singular before a vowel or *h* mute:

| | | | |
|---|---------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| beau, | <i>fine</i> , | <i>fem.</i> belle, | un bel arbre; |
| nouveau, | <i>new</i> , | „ nouvelle, | un nouvel habit; |
| fou, | <i>mad</i> , | „ folle, | un fol enfant; |
| mou, | <i>soft</i> , | „ molle, | un mol oreiller; |
| vieux, | <i>old</i> , | „ vieille, | un vieil Écossais; |
| <i>but</i> beaux, etc., in plural, <i>e.g.</i> de beaux arbres. | | | |

Obs.

| | | |
|---|------------------------------------|--|
| Un vieillard, <i>an old man</i> ; | une vieille, <i>an old woman</i> . | Un nouvel habit, <i>a new, i.e. a different coat</i> (see § 46). |
| Un vieux soldat, <i>an aged soldier, old in years</i> . | | Un habit neuf, <i>a coat new from the shop</i> . |
| Un ancien soldat, <i>an old (e.g. one who has been a) soldier</i> . | | Un fou (noun), <i>a madman, a jester: also a bishop (in chess)</i> . |

Notice the following idioms:

| | |
|--|--|
| Le beau monde, <i>the fashionable folk</i> . | J'ai beau parler, <i>it's no good my speaking</i> . |
| Un bel esprit, <i>a clever person, a wit</i> . | |
| Vous l'avez échappé belle, <i>you have had a narrow escape</i> . | Coucher à la belle étoile, <i>to sleep in the open air</i> . |
| Il rit de plus belle, <i>he laughed louder than ever</i> . | Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau? <i>what news?</i> |
| Bonnes nouvelles, <i>good news</i> . | Le nouvel an, <i>the new year</i> . |

37. More or less **irregular formation** of Feminines of Adjectives, not mentioned previously

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| absous, <i>absolved</i> , absoute. | coi, <i>quiet</i> , coite. |
| bénin, <i>benignant</i> , bénigne. | dissous, <i>dissolved</i> , dissoute. |
| bref, <i>brief</i> , brève. | long, <i>long</i> , longue. |
| doux, <i>sweet</i> , douce. | malin, <i>malignant</i> , maligne. |
| épais, <i>thick</i> , épaisse. | nul, <i>no</i> , nulle. |
| exprès, <i>express</i> , expresse. | oblong, <i>oblong</i> , oblongue. |
| faux, <i>false</i> , fausse. | paysan, <i>peasant</i> , paysanne. |
| favori, <i>favourite</i> , favorite. | roux, <i>red</i> , rousse. |
| frais, <i>fresh</i> , fraîche. | tiers, <i>third</i> , tierce. |
| gentil, <i>nice</i> , gentille. | |

hébreu, *Hebrew*, takes hébraïque for its feminine: used as a noun, it has a regular feminine, *e.g.* une jeune Hébreue.

38. Feminine of Certain Nouns.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| abbé, <i>abbot</i> , abbesse. | héros, <i>hero</i> , héroïne. |
| dieu, <i>god</i> , déesse. | jumeau, <i>twin</i> , jumelle. |
| comte, <i>count</i> , comtesse. | pêcheur, <i>fisher</i> , pêcheuse. |
| duc, <i>duke</i> , duchesse. | pêcheur, <i>sinner</i> , pécheresse. |
| hôte, <i>host</i> , guest, hôtesse. | fil, <i>son</i> , fille. |
| maître, <i>master</i> , maîtresse. | frère, <i>brother</i> , sœur. |
| negre, <i>negro</i> , négresse. | gendre, <i>son-in-law</i> , bru. |
| prince, princesse. | mari, <i>husband</i> } |
| traître, <i>traitor</i> , traîtresse. | homme, <i>man</i> } femme. |
| empereur, impératrice. | neveu, <i>nephew</i> , nièce. |
| ambassadeur, ambassadrice. | oncle, <i>uncle</i> , tante. |
| roi, <i>king</i> , reine. | parrain, <i>godfather</i> , marraine. |
| compagnon, compagne. | père, <i>father</i> , mère. |
| chanteur, <i>singer</i> , chanteuse, and cantatrice, <i>primadonna</i> . | |
| gouverneur has gouvernante, <i>governess</i> or <i>housekeeper</i> . | |
| serviteur, <i>servant</i> , has servante (the masculine form, servant, is now used only with special meaning, e.g. servant (d'artillerie), <i>gunner</i>). | |
| suisse, <i>Swiss</i> , is an adjective, masculine and feminine: but a <i>Swiss woman</i> (noun) is une Suissesse. | |

39. Names of Animals.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| âne, <i>ass</i> , ânesse. | cochon, <i>pig</i> , coche. |
| bélier, <i>ram</i> , brebis. | coq, <i>cock</i> , poule. |
| bouc, <i>goat</i> , chèvre. | lion, lionne. |
| canard, <i>drake</i> , cane. | loup, <i>wolf</i> , louve. |
| cerf, <i>stag</i> , biche. | mulet, <i>mule</i> , mule. |
| chat, <i>cat</i> , chatte. | taureau, <i>bull</i> , vache. |
| cheval, <i>horse</i> , jument. | tigre, <i>tiger</i> , tigresse. |

Obs. Many names of animals have but one gender, irrespective of sex, e.g. le castor, *beaver*; le rossignol, *nightingale*; la souris, *mouse*; la baleine, *whale*. To distinguish the sex, add *mâle*, *femelle*: thus, un castor mâle, une souris mâle, un rossignol femelle.

40. Concord of the Adjective.

1. Adjectives and participles used as adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they qualify.

2. When qualifying more than one noun, the adjective is put into the plural, and if the nouns differ in gender the adjective is masculine.

E.g. Ces messieurs et ces dames sont fatigués.
 Une témérité et un courage étonnants.
 Grands furent sa surprise et son désespoir.

41. Peculiarities of Certain Adjectives.

Demi, *half*, **Nu**, *bare*, do not inflect when used before the noun. Thus, Une demi-heure.—Une heure et demie.—Nu-tête et pieds nus.

Demi, used as a noun, is *masculine*, *e.g.* Deux demis valent un entier. The *half-hour*, however, is *la demie*, *feminine*, *e.g.* Cette horloge sonne les demies. Used as an *adverb*, **demi** is invariable, *e.g.* Une course demi-morte.—Les yeux à demi fermés.

Feu (*f.* **Feue**, *pl.* **Feus**), *deceased*, follows a similar rule: thus—feu la reine; la feue reine, *the late queen*.

[*Demi*, *Nu*, *Feu*, may now agree with the nouns they precede.]

Other adjectives similarly used:

Vous recevrez **franc de port** cette lettre.
 Vous recevrez cette lettre **franche de port**.
Haut les mains!
 Je tiens la main **haute** à cet homme.
 Elle a des fleurs **plein** les corbeilles.

Possible with superlatives is invariable: Il faut lire les meilleurs livres possible (=qu'il est possible).

42. Compound Adjectives.

1. If both parts of the compound are meant to qualify, they both inflect, *e.g.* Sourd-muet, *deaf and dumb*. Des filles sourdes-muettes.

2. If the first part is adverbial, the second part only inflects:—nouveau-né (des enfants nouveau-nés), clair-semé (de l'herbe clair-semée), court-vêtu, demi-mort, etc.

Obs. However we find—une porte grande ouverte, des fleurs fraîches-cueillies, though the first part of the compound is clearly adverbial.

3. If the second part is used as a noun, both parts inflect—le nouveau marié, la nouvelle mariée; les nouveaux venus, etc.

43. Compound Adjectives of colour are invariable, *e.g.* des yeux bleu-clair, des cheveux châtain-clair, des robes bleu de ciel, une faible ligne saumon pâle. Of course nouns used as adjectives of colour are invariable. Des cheveux paille = cheveux couleur de paille, *straw coloured*.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

44. In Modern French, Adjectives sometimes **precede**, sometimes **follow** the Nouns they qualify. No satisfactory rule of universal application can be given, but the beginner would do well to be guided by the following directions :

- a. The following *always follow* the noun :
 1. Adjectives of nationality. L'armée française.
 2. Nouns used as adjectives. Un courage guerrier.—Une table Louis XV.—Savon Sunlight.
- b. The following *generally follow* the noun :
 3. Adjectives of colour, shape, etc. Une fleur blanche.—Une table carrée. Used metaphorically, adjectives of colour *precede* the noun, e.g. un noir chagrin, *a bitter grief*; une verte semonce, *a good talking-to*. But, une nuit blanche, *a sleepless night*.
 4. Participles used as adjectives. Un enfant gâté, *a spoilt child*.—Des couteaux tranchants. (But soi-disant, prétendu, *so called*, always precede the noun.)
 5. Adjectives joined by *et* or *ou*. Une étude charmante et curieuse.
 6. Adjectives of more syllables than the noun. Une terreur inexprimable.
 7. Adjectives qualified by adverbs. Un homme fort suspect.
- c. The following *always precede* the noun :
 8. Ordinal numerals. La troisième rue à gauche.—Le premier mai. (Also, le vingt mai, *but* Charles premier, Charles deux.)
 9. Adjectives qualifying proper nouns. La belle France.—Le jeune Henri.
- d. The following *generally precede* the noun :
 10. Ancien, bon, beau, mauvais, méchant, petit, haut, long, gros, vilain, vaste, joli, jeune, vieux. (See § 46.)

45. The rule generally laid down in French Grammars, that Adjectives follow the noun, is by no means borne out in practice. The position of

the adjective is not a question of rule, but one of taste and style, and, as will be seen in the following instances, writers of the present day frequently place *before* the noun adjectives which according to ordinary notions should certainly go *after*.

Mon cher et regretté père.

Une verte vallée.

Il avait reçu ces dures mais puissantes leçons.

La blanche descente des flocons commença.

Nos excellents et légers et courageux petits chevaux bondissent de sillon en sillon.

La manière du jeune et déjà célèbre sculpteur.

Ils ont traité le sujet avec la plus évidente et la plus honorable bonne foi.

Cette grise après-midi de dimanche.

46. The following **change their meaning according to their position** before or after the noun.

un **bon** homme, *good, simple man.*

un **brave** homme, *good, honest.*

ma **chère** fille, *beloved.*

la **dernière** année, *last of several years.*

un **honnête** homme, *respectable.*

la **même** idée, *the same idea.*

ses **propres** mains, *his own hands.*

un **simple** soldat, *a private.*

mon **pauvre** enfant, *to be pitied.*

un **nouvel** habit, *new, another.*

une **grande** dame, *lady of rank.*

un **maigre** dîner, *a poor dinner.*

de **méchants** vers, *worthless.*

une **certaine**¹ vertu, *a certain virtue.*

d'une **commune** voix, *unanimously.*

un **mauvais** air, *vulgar.*

un **faux** air, *vague likeness.*

la **pure** vérité, *nothing but.*

la **haute** mer, *open sea.*

un homme **bon**, *upright.*

un homme **brave**, *brave.*

un chapeau **cher**, *expensive.*

l'année **dernière**, *last year.*

un homme **honnête**, *polite, polished.*

l'idée **même**, *very, itself.*

les mains **propres**, *clean hands.*

un homme **simple**, *simple.*

une femme **pauvre**, *indigent.*

un habit **nouveau**, *new-fashioned.*

une dame **grande**, *tall.*

un repas **maigre**, *without meat.*

un homme **méchant**, *spiteful.*

une vertu **certaine**, *undoubted.*

une voix **commune**, *coarse, vulgar.*

un air **mauvais**, *angry, vicious.*

un air **faux**, *deceitful look.*

un ciel **pur**, *clear, cloudless.*

la mer **haute**, *high water.*

¹ Indefinite adjective. See § 126.

VI. GENDER OF NOUNS

* * The following remarks will be helpful but do not claim to be complete. Genders of French nouns will be best learnt, not by elaborate schemes, but by careful attention to the text of French books.

47. As a general principle words derived from Latin masculines or neuters are *masculine*; from Latin feminines they are *feminine*. Many words derived from Latin neuter plurals are *feminine*, owing to similarity with the feminine singular termination, e.g., étude, from *studia*; œuvre, *opera*; arme, *arma*; pomme, *poma*; poire, *pira*, etc.

48. Gender is shown by: *A.* MEANING; *B.* TERMINATION.

A. By MEANING.

i. Masculine are:

| | <i>Examples.</i> | <i>Principal Exceptions, feminine.</i> |
|--------------------------|------------------|--|
| <i>a. Males . .</i> | homme . roi | The following are always <i>feminine</i> , even when referring to <i>men</i> :—la personne, connaissance, victime, dupe, sentimentelle, vedette, recrue, pratique, vigie, estafette, ordonnance. The titles Majesté, Altesse, Grandeur, etc., require the 3rd person and <i>feminine</i> gender, e.g. votre Majesté m'a ordonné de me rendre auprès d'elle. |
| <i>b. Trees . .</i> | pommier . | Aubépine (<i>hawthorn</i>), épine (<i>thorn</i>), |
| <i>Shrubs . .</i> | laurier | vigne (<i>vine</i>). |
| <i>c. Minerals,</i> | cuivre . | Craie (<i>chalk</i>), argile (<i>clay</i>), chaux (<i>lime</i>), |
| <i>Metals, &c. .</i> | | houille (<i>coal</i>). |
| <i>d. Days, Months</i> | jeudi . | Automne and après-midi are sometimes |
| | mai | <i>feminine</i> . |
| <i>Seasons . .</i> | printemps . | <i>Festivals</i> are <i>feminine</i> . La Toussaint (<i>All Saints</i>), La Saint-Jean (<i>St John's Day</i>), etc. (<i>fête</i> understood). |
| <i>e. Winds . .</i> | zéphyr . | Bise (<i>N.-E. wind</i>), mousson (<i>monsoon</i>), brise. [Nord, Sud, Est, Ouest are <i>masculine</i> .] |
| <i>f. Languages .</i> | le chinois . | (But langue is <i>feminine</i> , e.g. la langue française.) |

ii. Feminine are :

*Examples.**Principal Exceptions, masculine.*

| | | |
|------------------|----------------|--|
| a. Females | femme reine | When referring to <i>women</i> , docteur, auteur, écrivain, amateur remain unchanged, <i>e.g.</i> cette femme est un écrivain célèbre. |
| b. Fruits, Herbs | pomme | Raisin (<i>grape</i>), ananas (<i>pine apple</i>), pruneau (<i>prune</i>), citron (<i>lemon</i>), abricot, melon. |
| c. Arts | peinture | Dessin (<i>drawing</i>). |
| Sciences | chimie | |
| d. Qualities | bravoure | |
| Virtues, Vices | douceur | Vice itself is <i>masculine</i> ; also, orgueil, mérite, talent, courage. |

49. B. By TERMINATION.

i. Feminine Terminations—

* * Most words in e are Feminine.

| <i>Termination.</i> | <i>Examples.</i> | <i>Principal Exceptions, masculine.</i> |
|--------------------------|------------------|--|
| eur (Abstract Nouns). | ardeur | Honneur, déshonneur, labeur, bonheur, malheur. Also, cœur, chœur, équilibreur, remorqueur (<i>tug</i>), ascenseur (<i>lift</i>). [<i>N.B.</i> —Fleur, <i>flower</i> , feminine, though flos (Latin) is masculine.] |
| ance | lance | No exceptions. |
| ence | prudence | Silence [<i>Lat.</i> silentium, <i>n.</i>]. |
| ion, tion | nation | Bastion ; million, billion, scorpion, lion, champion ; poison, grison, oison, bison, tison. |
| sion | diversion | |
| ison | trahison | No exceptions. |
| aison | cargaison | Grade. |
| ade | brigade | Comité, comté, côté, été, thé, traité. |
| té | timidité | No exceptions [<i>allié, marié, &c.</i> , are past participles]. |
| ié | pitié | Musée, lycée, trophée. |
| ée | soirée | Génie, foie (<i>liver</i>), parapluie (<i>umbrella</i>), incendie. |
| ie | partie | Augure, mercure, murmure, parjure. |
| ure | figure | Le greffe, <i>registry</i> ; la greffe, <i>graft</i> . |
| ffe | griffe | Intervalle, libelle, mille, porte-feuille. |
| lle | file | Homme, dilemme, gramme and compounds. |
| mme | pomme | Beurre, lierre, parterre, tonnerre, verre. |
| rre | terre | Carrosse. |
| sse | tresse | Squelette. |
| tte | dette | No exceptions. |
| nne | canne | No exceptions. |
| ppe | trappe | No exceptions. |

ii. Masculine Terminations—

* * Most words ending in a Consonant are Masculine.

| <i>Termination.</i> | <i>Examples.</i> | <i>Principal Exceptions, feminine.</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|--|
| eur (Agent) | acteur . | No exceptions (see above). |
| ment . | instrument . | Jument (<i>mare</i>). |
| b, c, d . | plomb, nid . | } No exceptions. |
| g, l, p . | sang, coq . | |
| q, z . | poil, nez . | |
| f, m, n . | chef, don . | |
| r . | four . | Clef, soif, nef; faim; fin, main. |
| s . | puits . | Chair, tour (<i>tower</i>), cuiller, cour, mer. |
| t . | rat . | Brebis, fois, souris (<i>mouse</i>), vis, oasis. |
| | | Dent, dot, forêt, gent, mort, nuit, part, plupart. |
| x . | reflux . | Croix, noix, paix, toux, voix, perdrix, chaud, poix, faux (<i>scythe</i>). |
| a . | réséda . | Villa, polka, mazurka, véranda. |
| i . | balai . | Fourmi, foi, loi, merci (<i>mercy</i>). |
| o . | écho . | Virago. |
| u . | clou . | Bru, glu, tribu, vertu. |
| eau . | bateau . | Eau, peau. |
| age . | voyage . | Page (<i>of a book</i>), plage, image, cage, rage, nage. |
| aire . | vocabulaire . | Grammaire, affaire, chaire, paire. |
| oire . | oratoire . | Gloire, histoire, armoire, foire, victoire, mâchoire. |
| gramme . | programme . | Épigramme, anagramme. |
| isme . | spasme . | } No exceptions. |
| isme . | despotisme . | |
| iste . | moraliste . | |
| logue . | astrologue . | |

50. Geographical Names

1. Towns and Countries in -e are *Feminine*; otherwise, *Masculine*.

Masculine are :—le Hanovre, le Havre, le Bengale, le Caire, le Péloponèse, le Mexique [*Mexico, the city of M.*, is also masculine.]

Metz, Jérusalem, Tyr, Sidon, La Cornouaille (*Cornwall*) are *feminine*. Athènes, Thèbes, Gênes, though plural in form, are treated as *feminine singular*.

2. Mountains are *Masculine*.

Feminine are :—Alpes, Pyrénées, Vosges, Cévennes, Ardennes, Cordillères, Andes.

3. Rivers in -e are *Feminine*.

Masculine are :—le Rhône, Èbre, Gange, Tibre, Euphrate, Tigre, Tage, Danube.

51. Nouns of Two Genders.

The commonest words are :

| <i>Masculine.</i> | | <i>Feminine.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| <i>aide</i> | assistant | assistance |
| <i>aigle</i> | eagle (male) | standard |
| <i>enfant</i> | child (boy) | child (girl) |
| <i>garde</i> | keeper | guardianship ¹ |
| <i>livre</i> | book | pound |
| <i>manche</i> | handle | sleeve ² |
| <i>mémoire</i> | bill, memoir | memory |
| <i>mort</i> | dead man | death |
| <i>page</i> | servant | page (book) |
| <i>pendule</i> | pendulum | clock |
| <i>poste</i> | post, duty | post office |
| <i>somme</i> | nap, sleep | sum |
| <i>souris</i> | smile | mouse |
| <i>tour</i> | trick, turn | tower |
| <i>vapeur</i> | steamer | steam |
| <i>voile</i> | veil | sail |

Others are :

| <i>Masculine.</i> | | <i>Feminine.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>barbe</i> | barb | beard |
| <i>bourgogne</i> | wine | <i>Bourgogne</i> , province |
| <i>champagne</i> | wine | <i>Champagne</i> , province |
| <i>coche</i> | coach | sow ; notch |
| <i>couple</i> | pair | brace, two |
| <i>crêpe</i> | crape | pancake |
| <i>critique</i> | critic | criticism |
| <i>enseigne</i> | ensign | signboard |
| <i>faux</i> | forgery | scythe |
| <i>forêt</i> | drill, gimlet | forest (<i>forêt</i>) |
| <i>guide</i> | guide | (in plural) reins |
| <i>manœuvre</i> | artizan | seamanship |
| <i>merci</i> | thanks | mercy |
| <i>mode</i> | mood | fashion |
| <i>mousse</i> | cabin-boy | moss, froth |
| <i>office</i> | office | pantry |
| <i>physique</i> | constitution | natural philosophy |
| <i>poêle</i> | stove | frying-pan |
| <i>relâche</i> | relaxation ³ | anchorage |
| <i>trompette</i> | trumpeter | trumpet |
| <i>vague</i> | vagueness | wave |
| <i>vase</i> | vessel, vase | mud |

¹ La Garde Nationale, *the National Guards*.

³ = No performance at a theatre, etc.

² Also, *English Channel*.

52. Peculiarities of Certain Nouns.

Chose, *thing*, is feminine; but *quelque chose*, *something*, *autre chose*, *something else*, are masculine.

Personne, *person*, is feminine, even when speaking of males; **personne**, *nobody*, masculine.

Gens (plural) = *men, people*, takes a *masculine* adjective after it, a *feminine* adjective before it—*les bonnes gens*, *ces gens* sont heureux.

When *gens*, preceded by an adjective, is further qualified by “all,” *tous* is used when the masculine and feminine forms of the adjective are identical, *toutes* when they are distinct. Thus: *Toutes les bonnes gens*.—*Tous les honnêtes gens*.

Obs. i. Heureux sont les *gens* qui travaillent.

ii. *Gens* de robe, *lawyers*, *gens* d'affaires, *business men*, etc., are masculine.

iii. The Singular *Gent* (rare) is feminine—*la gent* qui pédale, *cyclists*.

[*Gens* may now be feminine in all cases.]

Amour, Orgue, masculine in the singular: masculine or feminine in the plural. (*Amour* = *a Cupid*, is always masculine.)

Délice, *delight*, masculine in singular, feminine in plural.

Foudre, *lightning*, feminine. In figurative expressions, e.g. *un foudre d'éloquence*, *an eloquent orator*, masculine.

Pâque, *Jewish Passover*, feminine. **Pâques**, *Easter*, is either masculine or feminine. *Pâques* est venu. *A Pâques* prochaines. *Pâques fleuries*, *Palm Sunday*.

Œuvre, *work*, feminine. But—*le grand œuvre*, *philosopher's stone*; *l'œuvre* de Molière, *M.'s works*, masculine.

Compounds of mi, feminine—*la mi-août*, *la mi-carême*.

Saints' Days, like *La Saint-Jean*, *La Saint-Michel*, etc. (*fête*, understood), feminine. See § 23.

VII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

53. The **Comparative** may express :

(a) **Superiority**, plus (grand) que, *greater than*.

(b) **Inferiority**, moins (grand) que, *less great than*, or

(c) **Equality**, aussi (grand) que, *as great as*.

E.g. Je suis plus fatigué que vous.
Il est moins habile que son cousin.
Je suis aussi riche que vous.

The comparison of equality with a negative is sometimes expressed by *si* instead of *aussi*: as—Le baron n'est pas si riche que le comte.

54. The Superlative may be

(a) **Relative**, *i.e.* in the highest or lowest degree in relation to other objects (Eng., *-est*).

Formed by using *le, la, les*, before *plus, moins*. *E.g.* La plus belle ville du monde (*or* La ville la plus belle).—La tâche la moins difficile.

With *mon, ton, son, ce*, etc., the article is omitted. Mes plus riches amis (*or* Mes amis les plus riches).—Votre plus grand défaut.

(b) **Absolute**, *i.e.* not compared with other objects (Eng., *very, extremely*, etc.).

Use the adverbs *très, bien, fort, extrêmement, on ne peut plus*, etc., before the adjective: as—Très beau.—Bien fatigué.—On ne peut plus solide.

Obs. There are also some superlatives formed in imitation of the Latin, in *-issime*:—*sérénissime, rarissime, richissime*, etc., and the substantive, *généralissime* (*generalissimo* sometimes in English).

55. Irregular Comparisons. Adjectives :

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Bon, <i>good</i> | meilleur | le meilleur |
| Mauvais, <i>bad</i> | pire, <i>or</i> plus mauvais | le pire, <i>or</i> le plus mauvais |
| Petit, <i>little</i> | moindre, <i>or</i> plus petit | le moindre, <i>or</i> le plus petit |

Adverbs :

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Bien, <i>well</i> | mieux | le mieux |
| Mal, <i>badly</i> | pis, <i>or</i> plus mal | le pis, <i>or</i> le plus mal |
| Peu, <i>little</i> | moins | le moins |
| Beaucoup, <i>much</i> | plus | le plus |

Obs. Plus mauvais refers to *quality*: *pire* rather characterizes *actions*.

Plus petit refers to *size*: *moindre* means *most inconsiderable*.

Jamais on n'avait la moindre observation à lui adresser.

On n'avait jamais trouvé la plus petite erreur dans ses comptes.

Ce vin est plus mauvais. La pire action.

56. More than, less than before a numeral is *plus de, moins de*. *E.g.* Il a plus de vingt ans.—Moins de dix pieds de largeur.

Obs. Plus d'une fois, *more than once*.—En moins de rien, *in less than no time*.

57. The more . . . the more, is *plus . . . plus*.

E.g. Plus il a, plus il désire avoir, *the more he has the more he wants*.

Plus le temps est beau, plus votre séjour sera agréable.

Plus il apprend, moins il sait.

Obs. Plus on se presse, moins on arrive, *more haste less speed*.

Le plus tôt sera le mieux, *the sooner the better*.

More and more, is *de plus en plus*.

E.g. Nos leçons deviennent de plus en plus difficiles, *more and more difficult*.

Il fait de plus en plus froid, *colder and colder*.

58. In after superlatives is *de*.

E.g. Le meilleur hôtel de la ville, *the best hotel in the town*.

59. Article variable or invariable with Superlative. The article varies if the object is compared with others. Thus—Elle a la plus belle voix que j'aie jamais entendue, *i.e. the best of all voices*.—De toutes les villes, celle-ci est la plus grande.

It is *invariable* if the object is compared with itself under differing circumstances; in fact *le plus* is an adverb. Thus—Sa voix était le plus belle samedi passé, *i.e. better then than on other days*.—C'est au commencement du xix^e siècle que cette ville était le plus grande.

[A relative sentence of which the antecedent is a superlative requires the subjunctive (§ 227, c).]

60. Most, as a superlative term, is used in English in three ways: i. equivalent to *very*: *e.g.* most cordial, most unhappy; ii. *the most*: *e.g.* the most unhappy man; iii. *a most*: *e.g.* a most accomplished man. These in French are:

i. *Très, bien*, etc., *e.g.* très cordial, bien triste (superlative absolute).

ii. *Le plus*, *e.g.* l'homme le plus triste; la plus grande maison (superlative relative).

iii. This form is expressed thus:—un homme des plus accomplis, *a most accomplished man*; une affaire des plus urgentes, *a most urgent business*.

61. Various comparative and superlative terms :

Il est plus âgé que moi de dix ans, *ten years older than I.*

Il est de beaucoup le plus riche, *by far the richest.*

Ils sont plus ou moins heureux, *more or less happy.*

Il est plus heureux qu'il ne l'était, *happier than he was (§ 274).*

Celui-ci est deux fois plus long que celui-là, *twice as long.*

Tant mieux, tant pis, *so much the better, the worse.*

Le plus jeune d'entre eux, *the youngest of them.*

Vous n'en êtes pas moins coupable, *you are none the less guilty.*

Elle ne s'en porte que mieux, *she is all the better for it.*

Ils firent les derniers efforts pour la retenir, *did their utmost to keep her back.*

Je vous méprise comme le dernier des derniers, *the basest of the base.*

Le dernier cri, *the very latest (fashion, etc.).*

Il n'y a pire eau que l'eau qui dort, *still waters run deep.*

VIII. THE NUMERALS

62. Cardinals.**Ordinals.**

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1, Un | 1st, Premier, unième |
| 2, deux | 2nd, deuxième, second |
| 3, trois | 3rd, troisième |
| 4, quatre | 4th, quatrième |
| 5, cinq | 5th, cinquième |
| 6, six | 6th, sixième |
| 7, sept | 7th, septième |
| 8, huit | 8th, huitième |
| 9, neuf | 9th, neuvième |
| 10, dix | 10th, dixième |
| 11, onze | 11th, onzième |
| 12, douze | 12th, douzième |
| 13, treize | 13th, treizième |
| 14, quatorze | 14th, quatorzième |
| 15, quinze | 15th, quinzième |
| 16, seize | 16th, seizième |
| 17, dix-sept | 17th, dix-septième |
| 18, dix-huit | 18th, dix-huitième |
| 19, dix-neuf | 19th, dix-neuvième |
| 20, vingt | 20th, vingtième |
| 21, vingt et un | 21st, vingt et unième |
| 22, vingt-deux, etc. | 22nd, vingt-deuxième, etc. |
| 30, trente | 30th, trentième |
| 31, trente et un, etc. | 31st, trente et unième |

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 40, quarante | 40th, quarantième |
| 41, quarante et un | 41st, quarante et unième |
| 50, cinquante | 50th, cinquantième |
| 60, soixante | 60th, soixantième |
| 70, soixante-dix | 70th, soixante-dixième |
| 71, soixante et onze | 71st, soixante et onzième |
| 72, soixante-douze, etc. | 72nd, soixante-douzième, etc. |
| 80, quatre-vingts | 80th, quatre-vingtième |
| 81, quatre-vingt-un, etc. | 81st, quatre-vingt-unième, etc. |
| 90, quatre-vingt-dix | 90th, quatre-vingt-dixième |
| 91, quatre-vingt-onze, etc. | 91st, quatre-vingt-onzième, etc. |
| 99, quatre-vingt-dix-neuf | 99th, quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième |
| 100, cent | 100th, le centième |
| 101, cent un | 101st, le cent unième |
| 108, cent huit | 108th, le cent huitième |
| 200, deux cents | 200th, le deux centième |
| 201, deux cent un | 201st, le deux cent unième |
| 1000, mille | 1000th, le millièm |
| 1001, mille un | etc., le mille unième |
| 10,000, dix mille | le dix millièm |
| 100,000, cent mille | |
| 1,000,000, un million | |
| 2,000,000, deux millions | |
| 1,000,000,000, un billion <i>or</i> un milliard | |

E.g. 596, cinq cent quatre-vingt-seize.

10,874, dix mille huit cent soixante-quatorze.

163,925, cent soixante-trois mille, neuf cent vingt-cinq.

3,452,683, trois millions, quatre cent cinquante-deux mille, six cent quatre-vingt-trois.

63. A hyphen is inserted in compound forms from 17 to 99, except 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, which have *et* without hyphen. There is no hyphen beyond *cent*.

[The hyphen *may* be omitted in all cases.]

64. Cinq makes ordinal *cinquième*, *neuf*, *neuvième*.

Unième is used only in compound forms; *premier* takes its place in other cases.

65. Second (pron. *se-gond*) replaces *deuxième* when two persons or things are spoken of. *E.g.* De ces deux frères, l'aîné est blond, le second est brun.

66. Vingt and **cent** take *s* when multiplied but not followed by another numeral. *E.g.* Quatre-vingts hommes. —Deux cents soldats. But—Quatre-vingt-cinq hommes.—Deux cent quatre enfants.

They do not, however, take *s* when used as ordinals—L'an sept cent.—Page quatre-vingt.

[These may now take the *s* even when followed by another numeral.]

67. Mille, *thousand*, is invariable: *e.g.* la retraite des Dix Mille, *the retreat of the Ten Thousand*. (For un mille, *a mile*, see § 68.)

Mil is used in *dates* of the Christian era: *e.g.* l'an mil neuf cent quatorze (or more usually dix-neuf cent quatorze). *But*, Saül périt l'an mille quarante av. J.-C. (avant Jésus-Christ = *B.C.*).

[*Mille* is now permissible in place of *mil*.]

68. Cent and **Mille** must not be preceded by *un* to translate *a hundred, a thousand*. (Un mille is *a mile*, and has a plural: *e.g.* deux milles font un peu plus de trois kilomètres.)

69. Millier is a noun, *a thousand*, and variable (see § 76). —Des milliers d'hommes.

Million is a noun, and requires *de*.—Deux millions d'habitants, *two million inhabitants*.

Billion, or more commonly, **Milliard**, is 1000 millions.

Trillion is the English billion, a million million, 1,000,000,000,000.

70. In Titles of kings, etc., the cardinal numeral is used, not the ordinal as in English, and the article is omitted. *The first*, however, is *premier*. Thus—Charles douze, *Charles the Twelfth*, François premier, *Francis I*.

Obs. Charles-Quint is the Emperor Charles V.

Other similar numerical expressions are much the same in French as in English:

Chapitre trois, *chapter III*.

Le troisième chapitre, *the third chapter*.

Page cent dix, *page 110*.

Au dix-neuvième siècle, *in the 19th century*.

Tome cinquième (or cinq), *volume V*.

Acte premier, scène deuxième (or deux), *act I, scene II*.

71. Date, Month, Days, etc. In expressing the date of the month in French, the cardinal numeral is used, with the exception of *le premier* (as in § 70), "of" and "on" are omitted, and both months and days are written with a small initial letter. Thus—*le premier mai, on the 1st of May, le vingt avril, the 20th April.*

| MONTHS. | | DAYS. | SEASONS. | CARDINAL POINTS. |
|---------|-----------|----------|-----------|------------------|
| janvier | juillet | dimanche | printemps | nord |
| février | août | lundi | été | sud |
| mars | septembre | mardi | automne | est |
| avril | octobre | mercredi | hiver | ouest |
| mai | novembre | jeudi | | nord-est |
| juin | décembre | vendredi | | sud-ouest, etc. |
| | | samedi | | |

NOTE.—All these words are masculine (automne sometimes feminine).

A few phrases :

| | |
|---|--|
| Le 31 courant, <i>the 31st inst.</i> | Tous les dimanches, <i>every Sunday.</i> |
| Le 10 du mois dernier, <i>on the 10th ult.</i> | En été, en automne, en hiver, <i>but</i> <i>au printemps, in summer, etc.</i> |
| Le 12 du mois prochain, <i>on the 12th prox.</i> | Le vent du nord, du sud, <i>the north, the south wind.</i> |
| Au mois de janvier, en janvier, <i>in January.</i> | Le vent d'est, d'ouest, <i>the east, the west wind.</i> |
| Il vient (est venu) mardi, <i>he is coming (came) on Tuesday.</i> | L'Amérique du Sud, <i>South America.</i> |
| Il vient le mardi, <i>he comes on Tuesdays.</i> | Le pôle sud, <i>the south pole.</i> |
| Lundi passé, <i>last Monday.</i> | Le nord de la France, <i>the north of France.</i> |
| | Le Midi, <i>the south of France.</i> |
| Obs. The following abbreviations are sometimes used in letters : | |
| 7bre (= septembre). | 9bre (= novembre). |
| 8bre (= octobre). | 10bre (= décembre). |

72. O'clock, described by *heures*, which must always be inserted, and *minutes*, which may be omitted. Twelve o'clock noon is *midi*; midnight, *minuit* (both these words are masculine).

| | |
|--|---|
| Quelle heure est-il? <i>what time is it?</i> | Le train de minuit et demi, <i>the 12.30 (midnight) train.</i> |
| Il est sept heures, <i>it is seven o'clock.</i> | Ce train part à 9 h. 10 du matin, <i>this train leaves at 9.10 a.m.</i> |
| A sept heures et quart, <i>at 7.15.</i> | Le rapide de 3 h. 50 du soir, <i>the 3.50 p.m. express.</i> |
| A huit heures et demie (see § 41), <i>at 8.30.</i> | Une demi-heure, <i>half-an-hour.</i> |
| A dix heures moins (un) quart, <i>at 9.45.</i> | Une heure et demie, <i>an hour and a half.</i> |
| Il est onze heures vingt (minutes), <i>it is 20 minutes past eleven.</i> | Trois quarts d'heure, <i>three-quarters of an hour.</i> |
| A midi moins dix, <i>at 11.50.</i> | |

Obs. French railways count 1 o'clock p.m. as 13 o'clock, and so on. Thus—le train de 16 h. 20, *the 4.20 p.m. train*. Cp. also—coucher du soleil, 17 h. 23, *sun sets 5.23 p.m.*; pleine lune, le 17, à 19 h. 16, *full moon on the 17th at 7.16 p.m.*

73. Age. Described by *ans*, which must always be inserted.

E.g. Quel âge avez-vous? J'ai quinze ans. *How old are you? I am fifteen.*

Elle est âgée de dix ans, *she is 10 years old.*

Un garçon de dix ans, *a ten year old boy.*

74. Measure, Height, etc. Both *Avoir* and *Être* are used in expressing measurement, as indicated in the following sentences:

De quelle hauteur est cet arbre? *how high is that tree?*

Cette tour a deux cents pieds de haut (*or* hauteur), *this tower is 200 feet high.*

La rue est longue de quatre cent quatre-vingts pieds, *the street is 480 feet long.*

Que cette rivière est profonde! *how deep this river is!*

Un fossé large de cinq pieds, *a ditch 5 feet broad.*

Il est plus grand que toi de toute la tête, *he is a whole head taller than you.*

Cette boîte a 10 pouces de long sur 15 de large, *this box is 10 inches long by 15 wide.*

75. Adverbial Phrases of Time.

Une fois, *once.*

Huit jours, *a week.*

Quinze jours, *a fortnight.*

Il y a trois jours, *3 days ago.*

D'aujourd'hui en huit, *to-day week.*

L'année passée, dernière, *last year.*

La semaine prochaine, *next week.*

Le mois suivant, *the following month.*

Deux fois par semaine, *twice a week.*

Tous les deux jours, *every other day.*

De jour en jour, *from day to day.*

De temps en temps, *from time to time.*

L'avant-dernier jour, *last day but*

one.

Obs. Trois fois quatre font douze, *thrice four are twelve.*

Deux fois autant que ça, *twice as much as that.*

Deux fois plus commode que . . . *twice as comfortable as . . .*

76. Collective Numbers. The termination *-aine* (fem.) applied to certain numbers denotes "*about*," "*or so*." Une vingtaine, *a score, twenty or so*; une douzaine, *a dozen, about twelve*; une huitaine, dizaine, quinzaine, cinquante, centaine, *about eight, etc.* Thus also millier (see § 69).

Une cinquantaine de personnes, 40 *or 50 people.*

Des milliers d'hommes, *thousands of men.*

Il a passé la cinquantaine, *he's over fifty.*

Renvoyé à huitaine, *adjourned for a week.*

Obs. Quarantaine also = *quarantine.*

77. Fractions.

 $\frac{1}{2}$ un demi. $\frac{1}{4}$ un quart. $\frac{1}{5}$ un cinquième. $\frac{1}{3}$ un tiers. $\frac{3}{4}$ les trois quarts. $\frac{2}{5}$ deux cinquièmes.La demie sonne, *the half-hour strikes.* Trop long de moitié, *too long by*La moitié d'un pain, *half a loaf.* *half.*Payer de moitié, *go halves.* Un quartier d'agneau, *a quarter*A moitié prix, *half-price.* *of lamb.*Moitié soie moitié laine, *half silk, half* Le quartier latin, *the Latin quar*
wool. *ter (district).*Passer un mauvais quart d'heure, *to have a rough time of it.*

IX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

78. Personal Pronouns in French are of two kinds :

(a) **Conjunctive**, which are constructed **with** the Verb.(b) **Disjunctive**, which stand **apart** from the Verb.

They are declined thus:

| CONJUNCTIVE. | | | | | DISJUNCTIVE. | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| | Nom. | Acc. | Dat. | Reflexive A. & D. | For all Cases. | Emphatic Form. | Reflexive. |
| Singular | <i>I, thou, etc.</i> | <i>Me, etc.</i> | <i>To me, etc.</i> | <i>Myself, etc.</i> | <i>I, me, etc.</i> | <i>Myself, etc.</i> | |
| | 1st je | me | me | me | moi | moi-même | |
| | 2nd tu | te | te | te | toi | toi-même | |
| | 3rd { il elle | le la | lui lui | se se | lui elle | lui-même elle-même | soi soi-même (3rd Pers.) |
| Plural | 1st nous | nous | nous | nous | nous | nous-mêmes | |
| | 2nd vous | vous | vous | vous | vous | vous-même vous-mêmes | |
| | 3rd { ils elles | les les | leur leur | se se | eux elles | eux-mêmes elles-mêmes | |

To CONJUNCTIVES add

en (Gen.), *of (by, from) it, of (by, from) them, some, any.*y (Dat.), *to (at, for) it, to them.*These are also adverbs : en = *thence*, y = *there, thither.*

Obs. i. **Tu** is used in addressing relations, close friends, children, also in addressing the Deity in the French Protestant Church.

Vous is used in addressing strangers, acquaintances, and in addressing the Deity in the Roman Catholic Church.

ii. The polite form of address in the 3rd person :

Monsieur désire-t-il quelque chose? *do you want anything, Sir?*

Ces dames vont-elles partir? *are you going to start, ladies?*

Madame est servie, *dinner is ready, ma'am.*

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

79. Position in the Simple Sentence. Before the Verb or Auxiliary (*avoir, être; faire, laisser, entendre, voir*).

Je le donne. Je me suis lavé. Je vous les ai donnés.

Il le fait venir. Après l'avoir bu. Il l'a entendu chanter.

Obs. In the case of the verbs *vouloir, pouvoir, devoir; aller, venir, envoyer*, governing an infinitive, the personal pronouns must be placed before the Infinitive, and *not* before the auxiliary verb. Thus :

Je puis le manger.

Je suis allé le chercher.

Vous devriez le dire.

Il veut les vendre.

Venez les voir.

Envoyez le chercher.

But one can say—je l'ai envoyé chercher.

80. Position in the Interrogative Sentence. The pronoun follows the verb, with hyphen—*Savez-vous? Ne lui ai-je pas donné? Votre père est-il arrivé?* (§ 154).

Another (more emphatic) form : *Est-ce que?* the verb and pronoun (or noun) standing in the affirmative order.

E.g. *Est-ce que je vous l'ai donné?—Est-ce que votre père est arrivé?*

[The hyphen may now be omitted.]

81. Position in the Imperative.

(a) **Affirmative** : pronoun *after* verb, with hyphen:

Dites-lui. Lisez-le. Taisez-vous.

Moi, toi, are used for *me, te*, accusative or dative, in the imperative affirmative:—*Lavez-moi. Lève-toi. Assieds-toi.* But *donnez-m'en, give me some.*

(b) **Negative** : pronoun *before* verb.

E.g. *Ne me lavez pas. Ne lui en parlez pas. Ne vous asseyez pas.*

82. Order of Governed Pronouns. When two or more pronouns precede the verb, they stand in order as follows:

(i) All tenses:

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|------------|----------|----------------------------|
| <i>je</i> | <i>ne</i> | <i>me</i> | <i>le</i> | <i>lui</i> | <i>y</i> | <i>en</i> <i>verb pas.</i> |
| etc. | <i>te</i> | <i>la</i> | <i>leur</i> | | | |
| | <i>se</i> | <i>les</i> | | | | |
| | <i>nous</i> | | | | | |
| | <i>vous</i> | | | | | |
| | <i>se</i> | | | | | |

E.g. Je le lui donne. Il ne vous le donne pas. Nous ne leur en avons pas donné. Ne lui en parlez pas. Je vous y en enverrai.

(ii) Imperative Affirmative only:

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|-------------|------------|----------------|----------|-----------|
| <i>verb</i> | <i>le</i> | <i>moi, m'</i> | <i>y</i> | <i>en</i> |
| | <i>la</i> | <i>toi, t'</i> | | |
| | <i>les</i> | <i>lui</i> | | |
| | | <i>nous</i> | | |
| | | <i>vous</i> | | |
| | | <i>leur</i> | | |

E.g. Donnez-le-moi. Permettez-le-lui. Donnez-m'en dix. Menez-nous-y.

83. It is *il, elle, le, la*, according to the case of the pronoun and the gender of the noun referred to. Thus "It (the pen = *la plume*) is lost," *elle est perdue*; "I see it (the dog = *le chien*)," *je le vois*. In other words, to a Frenchman, all objects, whether animate or inanimate, are either *he* or *she*.

84. Elision. *Je, me, te, le, la, se* suffer elision before a vowel or *h* mute (*lui* never): *Je l'aime, Il s'en moque*. No elision when following the verb: *Ai-je entendu? Donnez-la à votre cousin*.

85. Notice—*Le voilà, there he (it) is*; *Les voici, here they are*; *En voilà deux, there are two*.

Obs. *Voilà* and *voici* are formed from the verb *voir*: hence the position and case of pronoun.

86. Reflexives. In compound tenses, if the reflexive pronoun is the Accusative, the past participle is variable; if Dative, the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object, if there be one.

Nous nous sommes lavés (acc.)—Ils se sont fait mal (dat.)
—Quels droits s'est-il arrogés (dat.)?

87. Reflexive pronouns have also **reciprocal** force.
E.g. Ils se détestent, *they detest one another*.—Aimons-nous, *let us love one another*.—Voici les lettres qu'ils se sont écrites.

Obs. *L'un l'autre, les uns les autres* sometimes added for the sake of clearness, but remember always to introduce the conjunctive pronoun as well. Thus:

Ils se détestent l'un l'autre. Elles se moquent l'une de l'autre.

The abverbs *mutuellement, réciproquement*, are also sometimes added, *e.g.* Les deux chefs se reconnurent mutuellement.

88. Idiomatic *le, la, les, en*.

1. **Le, la, les**, are introduced idiomatically before the verb to *resume* the sense of an adjective, noun, or phrase preceding (usually disregarded in English).

(a) *Adjective—le*, invariable.

Elle est fatiguée, mais moi je ne *le* suis pas, *I am not*.

(b) *Noun—pronoun* takes the gender and number of the noun.

Êtes-vous l'institutrice de ces enfants? Oui, je *la* suis, *Yes, I am*.

But when the noun merely denotes a *quality*, or is used in an adjectival sense, *le* invariable is used.

Vous n'êtes donc pas institutrice de profession? Si, je *le* suis, *Yes, I am one*.

(c) *Phrase—le*, invariable.

Elle aime les jouets, je *le* sais, *I know*.

Le train est-il parti? Je *le* crois, *I think so*.

2. **En** is used in much the same way.

Avez-vous des gâteaux? Oui, j'*en* ai, *Yes, I have*.

J'*en* ai mangé quatre, *I have eaten four*.

89. Personal pronouns are not used after prepositions in reference to inanimate objects. Use instead, *e.g.*, dedans, là-dedans, *in it*; dessus, là-dessus, *on it*; là-contre, par-là, jusque-là, etc., etc.

44 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

90. When the object of a verb is placed, for the sake of emphasis, before the verb, it is necessary to repeat it by means of the conjunctive pronoun.

Les enfants nous *les* aimons, *children we love.*

Les heures que j'ai passées là-bas je ne *les* oublierai jamais.

91. To translate such phrases as "you and me," "us and them," etc. (acc. or dat.), two conjunctive pronouns cannot be used. Study the following:

Big enough to hold you and me, *assez grand pour nous contenir, nous deux*, or, *vous et moi aussi.*

They found you and him at the station, *ils vous ont trouvés, vous et lui, à la gare.*

I have something to say to you and her, *j'ai quelque chose à vous dire, à tous deux.*

92. *En*, *y*, are generally used of things, but sometimes of persons.

E.g. Ils aiment leurs femmes et en sont tendrement aimés.

On en a fait un homme remarquable.

C'est un traître, ne vous *y* fiez pas.

93. Further examples and idiomatic uses:

Vous l'avez échappé belle, *you have had a narrow escape.*

Il l'emporte sur ses ennemis, *he prevails over his foes.*

Les larmes lui en vinrent aux yeux, *it brought tears to his eyes.*

En êtes-vous bien sûr? *are you quite sure?*

A qui en avez-vous? *whom are you vexed with?*

C'en est fait de mes beaux rêves, *it's all up with my fine dreams.*

A quel chapitre en sommes-nous? *what chapter are we at?*

Ils ont fini par en venir aux prises, *they finished by coming to blows.*

Il en est quitte pour une amende, *he gets off with a fine.*

Si vous étiez riche, en seriez-vous plus heureux?, *would you be any the happier?*

Vous n'en êtes pas moins à plaindre, *you are none the less to be pitied.*

S'il en est ainsi, *if that is the case.*

Quoi qu'il en soit, *however that may be.*

Croyez-m'en, *take my word for it.*

Il y va de sa vie, *his life is at stake.*

Vous y êtes, *you've guessed it! you've hit it!*

Est-ce que Madame J. y est? *Is Mrs J. at home?*

DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

94. The Disjunctive Pronouns are used:

1. With **prepositions**. Avec moi; chez eux; ce livre est à elle.

2. To **emphasize** the Subject or Object of a Verb, with or without the conjunctive.

(i) **Conjunctive pronoun expressed :**

Moi, j'y vais.—Voudriez-vous me perdre, moi, votre allié ?

Note the dative : Cela m'est égal à moi, *it's all the same to me*.—Mon livre à moi a des images, my *book has pictures* (see § 106).

(ii) **Conjunctive pronoun not expressed**, the disjunctive standing as subject of the verb when strong emphasis or contrast is desired :—Je pense ainsi, mais lui pense autrement. Especially if *seul* or any such word, or a participle, or a phrase intervenes between the pronoun and the verb :

Eux seuls peuvent faire une telle chose.

Lui aussi regarde le tableau.

Lui, interdit, s'arrêta sur le seuil.

Obs. Nous autres, vous autres, a common way of emphasizing the pronoun.

E.g. Vous autres Français.—Nous autres Anglais nous sommes à admirer (*are to be admired*).

3. In a **composite subject**.

Lui et moi nous sommes en retard.

Sa sœur et lui seront récompensés.

4. Before **relative pronouns**. Moi qui vous parle.

5. With **c'est**. C'est moi, *it is I*. Est-ce toi ? *is it thou ?* C'est nous, c'était vous, etc. In the 3rd person plural, ce sont eux, *it is they*. (C'est eux, however, is now recognized as not incorrect. See § 123.)

6. Standing **alone**. Plus grand que toi.—Qui a fait cela ? Moi.

95. The forms **moi-même**, **toi-même**, etc., are not reflexive ; they are emphatic disjunctive pronouns.

Elle l'a fait elle-même. Il se dit à lui-même.

96. The Disjunctive is also used with three Classes of Verbs :

1. **Verbs of Motion** (Latin *ad* with accus.). *E.g.* Il vint à moi. Courez à elle.

But when such verbs are used in a figurative sense, the conjunctive is used. *E.g.* Il me vient une idée (*occurs to me, dative*).

2. **Reflexive Verbs** connected with two pronouns.

When the reflexive pronoun is in the accusative case, the pronoun in the dative case takes the disjunctive form :

Elle s'est fiée à moi. Je me montre à eux. Ils s'offrent à nous.

But if the reflexive pronoun is dative, both pronouns take the conjunctive form : Je me la rappelle. Il se le réservait.

Lui, leur are never found with reflexive verbs.

3. **Several Verbs with the Dative**, such as—*songer à, résister à, faire attention à, penser à*, etc., when speaking of persons :

Je pense à lui. Ne faites pas attention à elle.

Of things (neuter), use *y* ;—*j'y résiste, il y renonce, n'y faites pas attention.*

97. **Soi, soi-même**, are reflexive, but are not to be used unless referring to indefinite pronouns (*on, chacun, personne, aucun, tout le monde*, etc.), or when some impersonal verb (*il faut*, etc.) precedes.

Il faut être fidèle à soi (-même).—Chacun pense à soi.

but Cet homme ne pense qu'à lui-même.

Elle était fort contente d'elle-même.

98. In the next few chapters it is most important to observe the difference between **Adjectives** and **Pronouns**. Adjectives qualify Nouns : Pronouns stand instead of Nouns. The chief difficulty lies in the fact that in English the same form is used for both : *e.g. that* man (adj.) ; *each* boy (adj.) : *that* is good (pro.) ; *each* for himself (pro.), etc. French has generally distinct forms. *Celui* for instance, as will be seen, is a pronoun, and cannot qualify a noun ; *chaque* is an adjective and can only be used in conjunction with a noun : and so on.

X.—POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

99. The Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns are thus declined:

| Pers. | ADJECTIVE. | | | PRONOUN. | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------|-------|--------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| | Singular. | | Plural. M. & F. | Singular. | | Plural. | |
| | M. | F. | | M. | F. | M. | F. |
| S. 1 | Mon <i>My</i> | Ma | Mes | Le mien <i>Mine</i> | La mienne | Les miens | Les miennes |
| 2 | Ton <i>Thy</i> | Ta | Tes | Le tien <i>Thine</i> | La tienne | Les tiens | Les tiennes |
| 3 | Son <i>His, her, its</i> | Sa | Ses | Le sien <i>His, hers, its</i> | La sienne | Les siens | Les siennes |
| P. 1 | Notre <i>Our</i> | Notre | Nos | Le nôtre <i>Ours</i> | La nôtre | Les nôtres | Les nôtres |
| 2 | Votre <i>Your</i> | Votre | Vos | Le vôtre <i>Yours</i> | La vôtre | Les vôtres | Les vôtres |
| 3 | Leur <i>Their</i> | Leur | Leurs | Le leur <i>Theirs</i> | La leur | Les leurs | Les leurs |

PRONOUN. Genitive—Du mien, de la mienne, des miens, des miennes.
Dative— Au mien, à la mienne, aux miens, aux miennes.
Etc. Etc. Etc. Etc.

E.g. Mon cheval. Mes enfants. Leur fils. Votre ennemi.
Sa vache. Notre maison. Leur fille. Leurs habits.
Mon chien est noir, le vôtre n'est-il pas blanc?
Le sien est plus intelligent que le mien.
Votre robe ressemble à la sienne.
Les numéros de son automobile et du mien sont les mêmes.

Leur (adj. and pron.) has no feminine form distinct from the masculine, but has plural **leurs**.

100. Before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, **mon**, **ton**, **son** are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*. *E.g.* mon aide, son habitude.

Obs. This was not the case in old French, which wrote *m'épée*, *m'amie*, etc. This last word has been corrupted into *ma mie*, my dear, darling; and we find *sa mie*, *ta mie*. Similarly we find *m'amour*.

101. Son, sa, ses (= *his, her, its*) agree in gender and number with the *thing possessed*. *E.g.* Elle a perdu son livre et sa plume, *her book and her pen*.—Elle a payé les dettes de son père.

102. Possessive Adjectives are **repeated** before every word. Thus:—Apportez mon chapeau et ma canne, *bring my hat and stick*.

103. "A friend of mine," *un de mes amis*.—"A soldier friend of his," *un militaire de ses amis*. (*Un mien ami* is an antiquated construction.)

104. With **parts of the body**, use the definite article, instead of the possessive adjective. *E.g.* Il leva la main, *he raised his hand*.—J'ai mal aux dents, *my teeth ache* (*I have toothache*).—Il a les cheveux gris, *his hair is grey*. (But with the verb *être*, one must say, *e.g.*, *ses cheveux sont gris*.)

Obs. i. If it is further necessary to define the possessor, use the conjunct. pers. pron. dative. *E.g.* Il s'est cassé la jambe, *he has broken his (i.e. his own) leg*.—Il lui avait attaché les mains, *he had tied his (some one else's) hands*.

ii. The limb or member spoken of is put in the singular, even if many individuals are in question—*E.g.* Les assistants hochèrent la tête (*the assistants had one head apiece*).

iii. For emphasis sometimes the possessive adjective is used. Thus:—Il le frappa de sa main, *with his own hand*.

iv. Note also the use of **propre**. Thus:—Ses propres mains, *his own hands*.—Devant mes propres yeux, *before my very eyes*.

105. Possessive adjectives are frequently used **objectively**. *E.g.* Venez à ma rencontre, *come to meet me*.—Allez demander de ses nouvelles, *go and ask after him*.—À sa vue, *at the sight of him*.

106. To **emphasize** a possessive adjective, add the disjunctive personal pronoun dative after the noun:—C'est ma faute à moi, *it's my fault*. Compare also—Notre maître à tous.—C'est une façon à lui, *it's a way of his*.

XI. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

107. These are declined as follows :

| Case. | RELATIVE. | | INTERROGATIVE. | |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| | <i>Singular and Plural.</i> | | | |
| | Persons. | Animals. Things. | Persons. | Things. (Neuter.) |
| N. | Qui <i>who</i> | Qui <i>which</i> | Qui Qui est-ce qui <i>who ?</i> | Que Qu'est-ce qui <i>what ?</i> |
| G. | Dont De qui } <i>whose</i> | Dont <i>whose</i> | De qui <i>of whom ?</i> | De quoi <i>of what ?</i> |
| Pr. ¹ | A qui <i>to, etc. whom</i> | <i>borrowed from</i> Lequel <i>to, etc. which</i> | A qui <i>to, etc. whom ?</i> | A quoi <i>to, etc. what ?</i> |
| A. | Que <i>whom</i> | Que <i>which</i> | Qui Qui est-ce que <i>whom ?</i> | Que Qu'est-ce que <i>what ?</i> |

a.

b.

c.

d.

¹ Prepositional case, *i.e.* the form used after prepositions.

| RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE. | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|----|----------|------------|
| Case. | M. | Sing. | F. | M. | Plur. |
| N. A. | Lequel <i>who, which, etc.</i> | Laquelle | | Lesquels | Lesquelles |
| G. | Duquel | De laquelle | | Desquels | Desquelles |
| D. | Auquel | A laquelle | | Auxquels | Auxquelles |

E.g. (a) Le soldat *qui* fut tué
Les hommes *dont* nous parlons
Mon frère *à qui* je ressemble
Le facteur *que* nous attendons

(b) Le chien *qui* aboie
Les fautes *dont* il se plaint
La chaise *sur laquelle* il est assis
Les vaches *que* nous voyons

- | | |
|---|--|
| (c) <i>Qui</i> est assis sur la chaise? <i>Qui est-ce qui</i> est assis? | (d) <i>Qu'est-ce</i> donc? <i>Qu'est-ce qui</i> est plus précieux que l'or? |
| <i>De qui</i> vous plaignez-vous? | <i>De quoi</i> parle-t-il? |
| <i>Avec qui</i> se promène-t-il? | <i>A quoi</i> ressemble-t-il? |
| <i>Qui</i> avez-vous vu en ville? | <i>Qu'avez-vous</i> entendu? |
| <i>Qui est-ce que</i> vous avez vu? | <i>Qu'est-ce que</i> vous avez lu? |

Notice that (a) the Relative Pronoun is never omitted, as it sometimes is in English—*Les fleurs que j'ai cueillies, the flowers (which) I have plucked.*—*Le champ dans lequel je me promenais, the field I was walking in*; (b) the *i* of *qui* is never elided.

108. The Interrogative Adjective is

| Singular. | | Plural. | |
|-----------|---------|---------|----------|
| M. | F. | M. | F. |
| Quel. | Quelle. | Quels. | Quelles. |

E.g. Quelle heure est-il? De quel auteur parlez-vous?

NOTE.—(a) Sometimes, with the verb *être* it is like a Pronoun, = *what is? what are?* *E.g.* Quelle est la différence (= quelle différence est la différence)?—Quels sont ces hommes?

(b) In exclamations, without article. *E.g.* Quel dommage! *what a pity!*—Quel beau cheval!

109. Lequel is Relative and Interrogative.

1. **Relative.** (a) Use *Lequel*, not *qui*, after prepositions, referring to animals and things.

E.g. La voiture dans laquelle nous nous sommes promenés.
Les arbres sous lesquels nous jouions.

Qui is generally used after prepositions in reference to persons, though *lequel* is often found. But after *parmi* and *entre*, *lequel* must be used for both persons and things.

E.g. Les Français parmi lesquels il se réfugia.
Les deux familles entre lesquelles il y a un procès.

(b) When referring to an antecedent which does not directly precede, *lequel* is used, to avoid ambiguity. *E.g.* Le père de cette jeune fille, lequel est très riche (*lequel* refers to *père*: *qui*, if used, might refer to *fille*).

2. **Interrogative**—equivalent to English *which one*?

E.g. Lequel de ces canifs voulez-vous?

J'ai perdu une canne. Laquelle?

Il est assis sur une chaise. Sur laquelle?

110. **Whose, Relative and Interrogative.**

1. **Relative—Dont; De Qui; Duquel**, etc. *Dont* is the usual word, of persons and things: *de qui, duquel* should only be used as indicated below (*d*).

(a) *Dont* is never Interrogative, and always stands first in its own clause.

(b) The noun connected with *dont* is accompanied by the article or some other determinative, unless it be a proper noun.

(c) If the noun connected with *dont* is nominative, it is placed directly after *dont*: if accusative, after the verb.

(d) Do not use *dont* when the noun is governed by a preposition; instead, use *duquel*, etc. (persons and things), *de qui* (persons).

E.g. La maison dont les fenêtres sont cassées.

Voici la dame dont vous connaissez si bien le fils.

La ville au milieu de laquelle se trouve l'hôtel.

Le commis sur l'honnêteté duquel (de qui) je compte.

2. **Interrogative.** With the verb *être*, use *à qui*, or *de qui*: as—*Whose hat is this?* A qui est ce chapeau?—*Whose son are you?* De qui êtes-vous le fils?

With other verbs, the adjective *quel* must be used: as—*Whose hands have done this?* Quelles mains ont fait cela?

111. **What, Pronoun, Neuter, Relative and Interrogative.**

I. **RELATIVE**, *What=that which* (Latin, *id quod*)—**Ce qui**, declined thus:

N. **Ce qui.** G. **Ce dont.** PR. **Ce à quoi.** A. **Ce que.**

Remember that the case of *ce* (demonstrative part) and *qui* (relative part) depends on the verb in their respective clauses. Study the following:

Ce qui est dans le tiroir m'appartient (*ce*, nom. to *appartient*: *qui*, nom. to *est*).

Ce que j'aime c'est l'honnêteté (*ce*, nom.; *que*, acc.; and note the

idiomatic repetition of *ce* before the verb *être* when followed by the noun, the real subject).

Je ne me souviens pas de ce que vous avez dit (*ce*, genitive; *que*, accusative).

Vous ne m'avez pas dit ce dont vous vous souvenez (*ce*, acc.; *dont*, gen.).

Faites attention à ce que je vous dis.

J'essuyai un refus, ce à quoi je ne m'attendais pas.

II. INTERROGATIVE. Direct Question, *What?*

1. *Nominative.* **Que (Qu'est-ce que), Qu'est-ce qui?**

(a) **Que**, the simple form, is used in a few phrases:

What is it? Qu'est-ce? [also, qu'est-ce que c'est?]

What is there? Qu'y a-t-il? [also, qu'est-ce qu'il y a?]

What is he? Qu'est-il? [also, qu'est-ce qu'il est?]

What will become of him? Que deviendra-t-il?

What is happening? Que se passe-t-il?

What is that? Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça?

Qu'est-ce que, *what is? what are?* is used meaning *what (sort of a thing) is?* followed by a noun.

E.g. Qu'est-ce que la poudre? *what is powder?* [also, qu'est-ce que c'est que la poudre?]

We have seen in § 108 that *quel est? quels sont?* followed by a noun are also *what is? what are?* The difference between the two is, that *qu'est-ce que*+noun asks for a description of the noun in question: *quel est, quels sont*+noun asks to *define or distinguish* a particular object. Thus:

Qu'est-ce qu'une fleur? = give me a description of a flower.

Quelle est cette fleur? = what flower is this particular flower?

(b) **Qu'est-ce qui**. This form is used when *what* is the subject of a verb (other than the copulative verb *to be*), or when *what is* has an adjective as its complement. Thus:

Qu'est-ce qui est plus dur que le silex? *what is harder than flint?*

Qu'est-ce qui vous amuse? *what amuses you?*

Qu'est-ce qui est sur la table? (*est* here is not copulative, but = *exists, is lying*).

2. *Accusative.* **Que, Qu'est-ce que?**

Qu'avez-vous fait? or Qu'est-ce que vous avez fait?

Obs. In *qu'est-ce qui, qu'est-ce que*, the last word in each phrase is the relative, and consequently the verb assumes the *affirmative* form.

3. Other cases are supplied by Prepositions and *Quoi*.
 De quoi vous plaignez-vous?—Sur quoi compte-t-il?
 —En quoi vous ai-je offensé?

III. INTERROGATIVE. Indirect Question, *What?* *Ce qui*, etc.

| <i>Direct.</i> | <i>Indirect.</i> |
|---|---|
| Qu'avez-vous vu? | Dites-moi ce que vous avez vu. |
| Qu'est-ce qui vous gêne? | Je ne sais pas ce qui me gêne. |
| Qu'est-ce qu'un glacier? | Expliquez ce que c'est qu'un glacier. |
| Que deviendra-t-il? | Je ne sais pas ce qu'il deviendra. |
| Qu'est-ce qui est plus terrible que ça? | Je vous dirai ce qui est plus terrible. |
| Qu'est-ce qu'il est? | Savez-vous ce qu'il est? |

112. If the antecedent is a sentence, "which" is rendered by *ce qui*.

Il pleut à verse, *ce qui* m'empêche de sortir.

With prepositions, *ce* is usually omitted—Il a manqué le train, sans quoi (*but for which*) il n'aurait pas été en retard.—Après quoi, il est parti.

113. Quoi. Neuter, Relative, and Interrogative. This may be called the *disjunctive* form of *que*, *i.e.* it is used standing alone, in exclamations, or after prepositions (just as *moi* is used instead of *je* or *me* in similar cases).

Quoi ! que dites-vous ! *what ! what do you say ?*

Voici à quoi je pense.

Dites-moi en quoi je peux vous servir.

114. Où (adverb, *where*) as Relative Adverb and Pronoun.

(1) of *Place*. *E.g.* La maison où (for *dans laquelle*) nous travaillons.

Où may also be preceded by the prepositions *par*, *de*, *jusque*, and used both relatively and interrogatively, *e.g.* La rue par où nous avons couru. —Par où avez-vous passé?—Le pays d'où je viens.—D'où vient que vous arrivez si tard? *how is it that you arrive so late?*—Jusqu'où les a-t-il suivis? *how far did he follow them?*

(2) of *Time*, when the antecedent is a substantive of time. *E.g.* Au moment où il a paru. (*Que* is sometimes also used in place of *où*. *E.g.* A l'heure que vous êtes parti. *Quand* is not used as a relative adverb of time.)

115. And who, and which are not used in English unless another relative sentence precedes. French style admits *et qui* (*que*, etc.) when any adjective or participle precedes qualifying the same noun.

54 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

E.g. Une boutique attenant à sa maison et qui donnait sur la rue.

J'entrai dans une grande pièce, pavée en brique, et où je vis pétiller un bon feu.

116. Inversion of subject and verb is very common in relative sentences, when the relative pronoun is the object.

E.g. Un secret qu'avait trouvé le grand financier.

Les précautions que prennent les compagnies de chemins de fer.

Le prestige dont jouissent au Nouveau Monde les artistes de la vieille Europe.

117. Further examples and idiomatic uses :

Le voilà qui vient, *there he is coming.*

Tout vient à point à qui sait attendre.

Qui est fidèle à ses amis est toujours aimé, *he who is faithful, etc.*

Sauve qui peut, *save himself who can.*

Coûte que coûte, *cost what it may.*

Ce qui me plaît c'est de vous voir heureux.

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or.

Nous avons vu tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau, *all that is finest, the finest things.*

Qui que vous soyez, *whoever you be.*

Quoi que je fasse, *whatever I do.*

De quoi s'agit-il? *what's it all about?*

Il n'a pas de quoi vivre, *he has not enough to live on.*

Vous n'avez pas de quoi vous plaindre, *you have nothing to complain of.*

Il n'y a pas de quoi, *pray don't mention it.*

Quoi de nouveau? *what news?*

Il ne savait que répondre, *he did not know what to answer.*

XII. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

118. Demonstrative Adjectives. *This, that, these, those.*

Singular.

Plural.

M.

F.

M. and F.

Ce.

Cette.

Ces.

Cet (before vowel or *h* mute).

Ce livre.

Ce héros.

Ces messieurs.

Cet homme.

Cette épée.

Ces dames.

The suffixes *-ci*, *-là* are added to the noun when it is required to give emphasis to the Demonstrative; thus:

Cette maison-ci, *this house (near me).*

Ces châteaux-là, *those castles (yonder).*

119. Demonstrative Pronouns. *This, that, these, those ; this one, that one ; the one (who), etc.*

Carefully distinguish between three groups of pronouns, and notice how each is used and constructed in a sentence.

| I. | Singular. | | Plural. | |
|----|---------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| | M. | F. | M. | F. |
| | Celui. | Celle. | Ceux. | Celles. |

This form of the demonstrative pronoun is used when *this, that, etc.*, stands for some definite noun (person or thing) already mentioned or thought of.

i. In its simple form, *celui*, etc., cannot stand alone ; it can only be used (*a*) before a relative pronoun, or (*b*) before *de* (genitive) :

Celui qui arrive le premier, the one who, he who, arrives first.

Ceux que nous aimons, those whom we love.

Celle dont vous parlez, the one you speak of.

Mon livre et celui de mon frère, my book and that of my brother.

Ma maison est plus grande que celle de mon ami, my house is larger than my friend's.

ii. With the addition of the suffixes *-ci, -là*, **Celui-ci, Celui-là** corresponds with the English **this one, that one**. This form cannot stand before *de*, and it is best not to use it before a relative pronoun : it stands alone.

Quel livre avez-vous choisi? Celui-ci, which book have you chosen? This one.

Cette montre-ci va très bien, mais je préfère celle-là.

Ceux-ci coûtent plus que ceux-là.

(When preceded by *c'est, celui-ci*, etc., is used before a relative pronoun thus : *C'est celui-ci qui coûte le plus cher, this is the one which costs most.*)

II. Ceci, Cela (neuter). This form of the pronoun does not refer to persons, but stands for a sentence, thought, idea, or action.

Il va pleuvoir : cela ne me plaît pas du tout, it is going to rain ; that does not please me at all.

Cela arrive souvent, that often happens.

Que veut dire tout ceci? what does all this mean?

III. **Ce** (neuter: not to be confused with the adjective *ce*) replaces *ceci*, *cela* (*a*) before parts of the verb *être*, (*b*) before the relative.

Mon ami a gagné un prix: c'est étonnant, *my friend has won a prize; that's wonderful.*

Faites ce que je vous dis, *do what I tell you* (see § 111).

120. Celui-ci, Celui-là, etc., also mean *the latter, the former* (Latin, *hic, ille*). Celle-ci est Juive, celle-là est Hollandaise.

121. Further notes on **Ceci, Cela**.

i. They are used in reference to some object *pointed at* but not definitely mentioned. *E.g.* Gardez cela, je vous donnerai ceci aussi.

ii. *Cela* (not *ceci*) is often idiomatically separated into two parts by the verb *être*: thus—*c'est là . . .*, *ce sont là*.

C'est là mon seul objet, that's my sole object.

C'est là ce que j'essaie de faire, that's what I'm trying to do.

Ce sont là mes sentiments, those are my sentiments.

(Another way of expressing the same thing is—*cela c'est mon seul objet.*)

iii. *Ça* is a shortened colloquial form of *cela*:—*Ça va bien. C'est ça.*

iv. *Cela* and *ça* are often used familiarly or contemptuously of persons—*Ça porte le nom de Fourchvif! that fellow bear the name of F.!*

122. **C'est** is used in emphasising nouns and phrases, thus:

E.g. *C'est à vous que je parle, it's you I'm speaking to,*
[not, as in English, *c'est vous à qui je parle*].

C'est ainsi qu'il a réussi à le faire, it's thus he succeeded.

N.B.—*C'est que* = *the reason is, because*. Si j'ai réussi, *c'est que* j'ai beaucoup travaillé.

123. He, she, it, they, with parts of the verb *être* are translated by *ce*, when the complement of the verb is a noun accompanied by the article or other determinative.

Il est paresseux, *but c'est un homme paresseux.*

Il est soldat, *but c'est un soldat.*

Elle est Française, *but c'est une Française.*

(But in the plural, *ce sont eux, ce sont des Françaises.*)

It is not, however, wrong to say *c'est eux, c'est des montagnes; ç'a été, ce sera, ç'eût* are always used for *ç'ont été*, etc.

124. Impersonal Construction. *It* is *il*, referring to a statement which follows; *ce*, referring to a statement which precedes.

Il est évident qu'il va réussir.
Elle va réussir; c'est évident.
Il est agréable de voyager en été.
Voyager en été, c'est agréable.

With verbs other than *être*, *cela* is used:

Cela m'étonne d'apprendre que, . . . *it astonishes me to hear that. . .*
Cela nous aurait fait frissonner de regarder en bas, *it would have made us shudder to look down.*

125. Further examples and illustrations:

Tous ceux qui venaient, *all who came.* Cela va sans dire, *that goes without saying.*
Tout ce qu'il a fait, *all he did.* Cela m'est égal, *that's all the same to me.*
Cela ne fait rien, *that doesn't matter.* Ça ne vaut pas la peine, *it's not worth while.*
Rien de ce qu'il demandait, *nothing he asked for.* Je ne sais pas ce qu'il dit.
C'est étonnant comme il ressemble, . . . *it is astonishing how like he is.*
Je préfère ceux-ci à ceux de votre frère, *I prefer these to your brother's.*
Ceux dont vous parlez, *the ones you are speaking of.*

XIII. INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

126. 1. The following are *Adjectives* only, qualifying nouns:

Certain, *certain.* Maint, *many a.* Quelque, *some.*
Chaque, *each.* Quelconque, *some or other.*

Certains (*plur.*) is sometimes used as a pronoun, as, *certain persons.* *Certain* has also the sense of *sure*, as, *j'en suis certain, I am sure, certain of it* (see § 46).

2. The following are *Pronouns* only, and cannot qualify nouns:

| | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Autrui, <i>others.</i> | Chacun, <i>each one.</i> | Quelqu'un, <i>some one.</i> |
| On, <i>one, they.</i> | Personne, <i>nobody.</i> | Quelque chose, <i>something.</i> |
| Rien, <i>nothing.</i> | Quiconque, <i>whoever.</i> | Autre chose, <i>something else.</i> |

3. The following are both *Adjectives* and *Pronouns*:

| | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Aucun, <i>no, none.</i> | Nul, <i>no, none.</i> | L'un et l'autre, <i>both.</i> |
| Autre, <i>other.</i> | Tout, <i>all, every.</i> | L'un ou l'autre, <i>either.</i> |
| Plusieurs, <i>several.</i> | Tel, <i>such.</i> | Ni l'un ni l'autre, |
| | Même, <i>same, self.</i> | <i>neither.</i> |

E.g.

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| certaines personnes. | plusieurs fois. |
| à chaque moment. | prenez l'un ou l'autre. |
| une idée quelconque. | ni l'une ni l'autre n'est venue |
| quelques hommes. | nul doute. |
| je n'ai rien vu. | une telle occasion |
| chacun le sait. | la même chose. |
| je vois quelqu'un. | |

127. Aucun, Personne, Rien, Nul, Ni l'un ni l'autre.

These words require *ne* with the verb, but not *pas*.

Aucune lettre n'est arrivée.
 Nul homme n'est content de son sort.
 Nul n'ose le contredire.
 Je n'ai rien vu.—Qu'avez-vous vu? Rien.
 Personne n'est venu.—Qui est venu? Personne.
 Ni l'un ni l'autre ne doivent (*or* ne doit) sortir.

Obs. i. **Personne**, the indef. pronoun, is masculine. The noun *personne*, a person, is feminine.

ii. **Aucun** is used in the plural with nouns that are plural only, as—*funérailles, mœurs, gens*, etc.

iii. **Rien** is also a noun when used with the article, meaning *a trifle*, as—*un songe, un rien, tout lui fait peur*.

En rien de temps, in less than no time.

Rien d'intéressant, nothing interesting.

Rien de ce qu'il me dit ne me plaît, nothing he says pleases me.

Rien qu'à le voir, merely to look at him.

128. On is used as a vague, indefinite, personal subject, very common in French, and representing the English *one, people, they, we*, etc. It may often be turned by the passive (§ 156). *E.g.* *On m'a dit, I have been told.*—*On fait des préparatifs, preparations are being made.*

i. **L'on** is often used for *on* after *et, si, ou, où, quoi, qui, que*, and at the beginning of a sentence. The use is literary rather than colloquial, and in the case of *que* it depends on euphony.

E.g. *Les actions par où l'on secourt ses semblables.*

Il faut que l'on conserve (not, qu'on conserve).

Il crut qu'on l'avait suivi (not, que l'on l'avait).

2. *On* is *nominative* only. Oblique cases are supplied by *vous*, *nous*, *se*, according to the sense: as—voilà ce que les gens vous promettent toujours.

Often the object is omitted altogether: as—cela intéresse et amuse, *that interests and amuses one*.

3. The adjective or participle referring to *on* may be *feminine* or *plural*, if the sense justifies it: but the *verb* is always in the singular. *E.g.* L'on est chez vous obligée de se taire.—Hier on alla à Versailles, accompagnés de quelques dames.

129. Tout, f. toute, pl. m. tous, f. toutes, all, every, is an adjective, a noun, and an adverb.

1. *Adjective.* (a) With article = *the whole, all, every*. Tous les hommes.—Toute la ville.—Toute une phrase.

(b) Without article = *any*. Diner à toute heure.—En tous sens.—Tout homme.—A tout moment.

Tout le monde, *everybody*.—Tous les deux, tous deux, *both*.—Tous les deux jours, *every other day*.—Vous tous, *all of you*.—Tout Paris, *all Paris*.—A tout hasard, *at all costs*.

2. *Noun.* (a) With or without article = *everything, the whole*. Tout est perdu.—Le tout est plus grand qu'une de ses parties.—Le tout ensemble, *the whole, the entirety*.

(b) *Tous* (pron. *tou-ss*), *toutes*, *everyone*. Il est aimable à tous et à toutes.

Tout also sometimes = *everyone* (German, *Alles*). Tout se tut.—Tout dort.

(c) After a list of nouns, *tout* sums up the whole (verb in singular). Maisons, temples, théâtres, tout était en ruines.

Obs. Tout ce qu'il fait, *all he does*.—Tout ce dont il se souvient, *all he remembers*.—Tout ce qu'il y a, *all there is*.

3. *Adverb.* (a) *Tout*, quite, is invariable, except when it precedes a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate. *E.g.* Mon frère est tout jeune.—Nous sommes tout prêts.—Sa sœur est toute petite.—Elles étaient toutes honteuses.—Elle n'est pas tout heureuse.—Elles sont tout étonnées.

(b) Ces gens sont tout yeux, tout oreilles, *these people are all eyes, all ears*.—Elle était tout attention.

(c) *Tout . . . que* has a concessive force. Tout enfant qu'il était, *child as he was*.—Tout attentive qu'elle était.

(d) Toute autre chose = *any other thing* (toute is an adjective).—Tout autre chose = *quite a different thing* (tout is an adverb = tout à fait).

130. Tel, f. telle, pl. m. tels, f. telles, such.

1. *Adjective.* Une telle maison, *such a house.* De telles maisons, *such houses.* When the noun is accompanied by an adjective, *si* is used: thus—Un si grand palais, *such a large palace.*

2. *Pronoun.* (i) Telle fut la réponse du médecin, *such was the reply,* etc. (ii) *Tel qui* = he who. As—Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera.

Obs.—Monsieur un tel, *Mr So and So.*—Tel ou tel arrangement, *such and such arrangement.*—Tel maître, tel valet, *like master, like man.*

131. Chaque, each, adjective, masc. and fem.; Chacun, f. Chacune, each one, pronoun. *E.g.* Chaque fois que je le vois, *each time (= whenever) I see him.*—Chacun son goût, *every one to his taste.*

132. Plusieurs, several, masc. and fem., is adjective and pronoun, whereas Maint, f. mainte, is adjective only (it is rarely used nowadays). As—Je vous l'ai dit plusieurs fois.—Plusieurs d'entre eux, *many of them.*—Maint homme, *many a man.*—Maintes fois, *many a time.*

133. Quelconque, masc. and fem., follows its noun. *E.g.* Il faut trouver une façon quelconque, *some way or other.*—Deux points quelconques étant donnés, *any two points,* etc.

Quiconque is a pronoun, *whoever.* Quiconque arrivera trop tard sera puni.

134. Autre, other, with the definite or indefinite article, is

1. *Pronoun:* as—l'autre, *the other;* un autre, *another;* d'autres, *others.*

For *nous autres, vous autres,* an emphatic form of the personal pronoun: as—Vous autres Français, *you Frenchmen:* see § 94.

2. *Adjective.* L'autre jour.—De tous les autres gens.—D'autres questions.—A d'autres moments.

Autre que, other than, is followed by *que*:—il n'a d'autre maître que ses désirs.

A few idiomatic uses:

De part et d'autre, *on both sides.*

Autre part, *elsewhere.*

Autres temps autres mœurs, *other times other manners.*

Il est devenu tout autre, *he has quite changed.*

Parler de choses et d'autres, *to talk of this and that.*

A d'autres ! *tell that to the marines.*

De temps à autre, *from time to time.*

135. Les uns... les autres = *some... others* (Latin, *alii... alii*). *E.g.* Les uns riaient, les autres chantaient.

136. Autrui, pronoun, not nominative, only used with prepositions. *E.g.* Les affaires d'autrui.—Ne faites pas de mal à autrui.

"Others" nominative, is *d'autres* or *les autres*. As—*D'autres vous le diront, others will tell you that.*

137. Another. In English *another* may mean *a different one*, or *one more*. 1. *Autre* = *a different one*. Je vais mettre une autre paire de pantoufles.

2. *Encore un* = *one more*. Encore un morceau de sucre, s'il vous plaît.

One another is l'un l'autre, les uns les autres (see § 87).

Ils se sont blessés l'un l'autre.

Elles tombaient dans les bras l'une de l'autre.

Assis l'un à côté de l'autre.

Puis ils se retirèrent les uns après les autres.

138. Même. 1. Preceded by the definite article, *le même* (*la même*, etc.) is an adjective, and means *the same*. *E.g.* A la même heure, au même endroit, les mêmes élèves. It is also used with *ce*. As—Ces mêmes hommes, *these same men*.

En même temps, *at the same time*.—C'est la même chose, *it's the same thing*.—Cet homme n'est plus le même, *this man is no longer the same*.

2. *Même*, with personal pronouns or nouns, means *self*, *very*. *E.g.* Moi-même, nous-mêmes, etc., *myself, ourselves*, etc.—Il l'a fait de lui-même, *he did it of his own accord*.—Les dieux mêmes, *the gods themselves*.

3. For *même*, adverb, see § 247.

139. Quelque, pl. Quelques, *some, a few*, is :

1. *Adjective*, masc. and fem. *E.g.* Quelques chasseurs montèrent dans le train (*Quelques* is restrictive : only sportsmen are in question ; whereas *des chasseurs* would imply sportsmen, not soldiers or navvies).

2. *Quelque* (invariable) is also used as an *adverb*, as we say, *some, about*; e.g. *Le chasseur a tué quelque vingt perdrix, some, about 20 partridges.*—*Elle est âgée de quelque 18 ans, eighteen or so.*

3. The corresponding *Pronoun, some one, some, is*:

| | | |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| M. | Singular. | F. |
| Quelqu'un. | | Quelqu'une. |
| M. | Plural. | F. |
| Quelques-uns. | | Quelques-unes. |

E.g. *Il y a quelqu'un dans le jardin.*—*Quelques-uns sont venus, some have come.*

Quelque chose, something, masculine; requires *de* before adjective (a similar construction with *rien*). *E.g.* *Donnez-moi quelque chose à boire, something to drink.*—*Quelque chose de bon, something good.* *Cp.* *Rien de nouveau.* (See § 17, *Obs. ii*.)

Autre chose, something else, masculine; as—*autre chose de neuf.*

140. Whatever, However, are translated by *quelque*, followed by *que* and the subjunctive mood. Thus:

1. *Whatever habits you have*, quelques habitudes que vous ayez (*quelques* is an adjective and inflects).

2. *However clever his pupils were*, quelque habiles que fussent ses élèves (*quelque* is an adverb and uninflected).—*Quelque bons écrivains qu'aient été Boileau et Racine, however good, etc.*

Also, *Tout riche qu'il était; Si riche qu'il fût, however rich he was, rich as he was.*

3. *Whatever*, pronoun, is translated by *quel que* (two words), *quel* inflecting as in § 108. *Whatever your faults may be*, quelles que soient vos fautes.—*Whatever they may be*, quelles qu'elles soient.

141. Any, Some, Anything, Something, Anyhow, etc.

Tout homme peut faire cela, any man can do that.
Le premier venu vous le dira, anybody will tell you so.
Ils peuvent venir d'un moment à l'autre, they may come at any moment.

Je ferai tout ce que tu voudras, I'll do anything you wish.
Presque personne, hardly anybody.
En tout cas il n'est plus là, anyhow he is not here any longer.
Faites-vous admirer n'importe comment, n'importe où, win admiration anyhow, anywhere,

| | |
|---|---|
| Sans aucun retard, | <i>without any delay.</i> |
| Il lit je ne sais quel livre, | <i>he is reading some book or other.</i> |
| Il lisait je ne sais quoi, | <i>he was reading something or other.</i> |
| Ne le donnez pas à qui que ce soit, | <i>do not give it to anybody.</i> |
| Ne lui prêtez pas quoi que ce soit, | <i>do not lend him anything.</i> |
| D'une manière ou d'une autre, de façon ou d'autre, | <i>somehow.</i> |
| Pas pour tout au monde, | <i>not on any account.</i> |
| Coûte que coûte, | <i>at any cost.</i> |
| Il y en a qui . . . | <i>there are some who . . .</i> |

XIV. THE VERB: MOODS, TENSES, ETC.

142. Verbs are either **Transitive** (active)—manger, *to eat*; or **Intransitive** (neuter)—venir, *to come*. The latter have no **Object** after them. The former may have either a **Direct Object**—je mange une pomme; or an **Indirect Object**—j'obéis à mon père.

Verbs may also be **Impersonal**—il pleut, *it is raining*; or **Reflexive**—je me lave, *I wash myself*.

143. Moods. Infinitive, Indicative, Conditional, Imperative, and Subjunctive. There are two **Participles**:—Present, mangeant; Past, mangé; and a compound (perfect) Participle, ayant mangé.

144. Tenses. *Simple*.—Present, Imperfect, Past Definite, Future. *Compound*.—Perfect, Pluperfect, Past Anterior, Future Perfect. The Subjunctive Mood has four tenses: Present, Imperfect, Perfect and Pluperfect. The Conditional, Present and Perfect, is also sometimes used as a Tense (§ 199).

The *Compound Tenses* are formed by means of the Past Participle and the auxiliary *avoir*. (Some verbs have *être*.)

145. Voices. *Active*—j'aime; *Passive*—je suis aimé. The passive is always formed by the verb *être* and the past participle.

146. Conjugations. There are three conjugations, verbs being grouped according to the ending of the Infinitive Mood:—

- I. **-er.** This conjugation contains by far the largest number of verbs, about 3600. *E.g.* parler, *to speak*.
- II. **-ir.** About 330 verbs in *-ir*, with present participle in *-issant*: *e.g.* finir, *to finish*, finissant; and 28 with present participle in *-ant*: *e.g.* sentir, *to feel*, sentant (§ 178).
- III. **-re.** Some 60 regular verbs are thus conjugated. *E.g.* rendre, *to render*.

The first conjugation is capable of forming new verbs *from substantives*: *e.g.* camper, from camp; also *from foreign words*: *e.g.* stopper, from Eng. *stop*.

The second conjugation forms verbs *from adjectives*: *e.g.* bleuir, from bleu; blanchir, from blanc.

FORMATION OF TENSES

147. It is usual to call **Primitive** (or **Primary**) the following parts of the Verb, a knowledge of which ensures a knowledge of certain other parts: 1. Infinitive; 2. Present Participle; 3. Past Participle; 4. Present Indicative; and 5. Past Definite.

I. From the **Infinitive** are formed the Future and Conditional: Donner,—donner-ai, donner-ais; dire,—dirai, dirais.

II. The **Present Participle** shows the same stem as the following: (i) The 1st, 2nd, 3rd plural, present indicative; (ii) Imperfect indicative; (iii) Present subjunctive. Finissant,—finissons - ez - ent, finissais, finisse, etc.

III. The **Past Participle** forms all Compound Tenses.

IV. With the **Present Indicative** goes the Imperative. Vends, mets, prends, etc., vendons, mettons, prenons, etc. For the 3rd singular and plural of the Imperative, the Subjunctive Present is used.

In the 1st conjugation, the *s* of the 2nd pers. pres. indicative is dropped in the imperative: (tu) donnes, *imperat.*, donne: but *is* added before *y* and *en*: thus, donnes-en, achètes-en, vas-y. So also cueilles-en, 2nd conjugation.

V. The **Past Definite** shows the same stem as the Imperfect Subjunctive. Allai,—allasse; conduisis,—conduisisse.

XV. THE AUXILIARY VERBS: *AVOIR, ÊTRE*

148. Conjugation of *Avoir*.

INFINITIVE.

Present.

Avoir, to have.

Perfect.

Avoir eu, to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Ayant, having.

Past.

Eu, had.

Perfect.

Ayant eu, having had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Present.

J'ai, I have.
tu as, thou hast.
il a, he has.
elle a, she has.
nous avons, we have.
vous avez, you have.
ils ont, they have.
elles ont, they have.

Compound Tenses.

Perfect.

J'ai eu, I have had.
tu as eu, thou hast had.
il a eu, he has had.
elle a eu, she has had.
nous avons eu, we have had.
vous avez eu, you have had.
ils ont eu, they have had.
elles ont eu, they have had.

Imperfect.

J'avais, I had (was having).
tu avais, thou hadst.
il avait, he had.
nous avions, we had.
vous aviez, you had.
ils avaient, they had.

Pluperfect.

J'avais eu, I had had.
tu avais eu, thou hadst had.
il avait eu, he had had.
nous avions eu, we had had.
vous aviez eu, you had had.
ils avaient eu, they had had.

Past Definite.

J'eus, I had.
tu eus, thou hadst.
il eut, he had.
nous eûmes, we had.
vous eûtes, you had.
ils eurent, they had.

Past Anterior.

J'eus eu, I had had.
tu eus eu, thou hadst had.
il eut eu, he had had.
nous eûmes eu, we had had.
vous eûtes eu, you had had.
ils eurent eu, they had had.

Future.

J'aurai, *I shall have.*
 tu auras, *thou wilt have.*
 il aura, *he will have.*
 nous aurons, *we shall have.*
 vous aurez, *you will have.*
 ils auront, *they will have.*

Future Perfect.

J'aurai eu, *I shall have had.*
 tu auras eu, *thou wilt have had.*
 il aura eu, *he will have had.*
 nous aurons eu, *we shall have had.*
 vous aurez eu, *you will have had.*
 ils auront eu, *they will have had.*

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

J'aurais,
 tu aurais,
 il aurait,
 nous aurions,
 vous auriez,
 ils auraient,

} *I should have,*
etc.

Perfect.

J'aurais eu,
 tu aurais eu,
 il aurait eu,
 nous aurions eu,
 vous auriez eu,
 ils auraient eu,

} *I should have*
had, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Aie, *have.*
 (Qu'il ait, *let him have.*)
 Ayons, *let us have.*
 Ayez, *have.*
 (Qu'ils aient, *let them have.*)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

(Que) J'aie,
 tu aies,
 il ait,
 nous ayons,
 vous ayez,
 ils aient,

} *I may have,*
etc.¹

Perfect.

(Que) J'aie eu,
 tu aies eu,
 il ait eu,
 nous ayons eu,
 vous ayez eu,
 ils aient eu,

} *I may have*
had, etc.¹

Imperfect.

(Que) J'eusse,
 tu eusses,
 il eût,
 nous eussions,
 vous eussiez,
 ils eussent,

} *I might have,*
etc.¹

Pluperfect.

(Que) J'eusse eu,
 tu eusses eu,
 il eût eu,
 nous eussions eu,
 vous eussiez eu,
 ils eussent eu,

} *I might have*
had, etc.¹

¹ These are conventional translations of French tenses and cannot always be so rendered in English.

Conjugation of Être.

INFINITIVE.

Present.
Être, *to be.*

Perfect.
Avoir été, *to have been.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.
Étant, *being.*

Past.
Été, *been.*

Perfect.
Ayant été, *having been.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Present.

Je suis, *I am.*
tu es, *thou art.*
il est, *he is.*
elle est, *she is.*
nous sommes, *we are.*
vous êtes, *you are.*
ils sont, *they are.*
elles sont, *they are.*

Imperfect.

J'étais, *I was (was being).*
tu étais, *thou wast.*
il était, *he was.*
nous étions, *we were.*
vous étiez, *you were.*
ils étaient, *they were.*

Past Definite.

Je fus, *I was.*
tu fus, *thou wast.*
il fut, *he was.*
nous fûmes, *we were.*
vous fûtes, *you were.*
ils furent, *they were.*

Future.

Je serai,
tu seras,
il sera,
nous serons,
vous serez,
ils seront,

}

*I shall be,
etc.*

Compound Tenses.

Perfect.

J'ai été, *I have been.*
tu as été, *thou hast been.*
il a été, *he has been.*
elle a été, *she has been.*
nous avons été, *we have been.*
vous avez été, *you have been.*
ils ont été, *they have been.*
elles ont été, *they have been.*

Pluperfect.

J'avais été, *I had been.*
tu avais été, *thou hadst been.*
il avait été, *he had been.*
nous avions été, *we had been.*
vous aviez été, *you had been.*
ils avaient été, *they had been.*

Past Anterior.

J'eus été, *I had been.*
tu eus été, *thou hadst been.*
il eut été, *he had been.*
nous eûmes été, *we had been.*
vous eûtes été, *you had been.*
ils eurent été, *they had been.*

Future Perfect.

J'aurai été,
tu auras été,
il aura été,
nous aurons été,
vous aurez été,
ils auront été,

}

*I shall have
been, etc.*

CONDITIONAL.

| <i>Present.</i> | | <i>Perfect.</i> | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Je serais, | } <i>I should be, etc.</i> | J'aurais été, | } <i>I should have been, etc.</i> |
| tu serais, | | tu aurais été, | |
| il serait, | | il aurait été, | |
| nous serions, | | nous aurions été, | |
| vous seriez, | | vous auriez été, | |
| ils seraient, | | ils auraient été, | |

IMPERATIVE.

Sois, *be.*
 (Qu'il soit), *let him be.*
 Soyons, *let us be.*
 Soyez, *be.*
 (Qu'ils soient), *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| <i>Present.</i> | | <i>Perfect</i> | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--|
| (Que) Je sois, | } <i>I may be, etc.¹</i> | (Que) J'aie été, | } <i>I may have been, etc.¹</i> |
| tu sois, | | tu aies été, | |
| il soit, | | il ait été, | |
| nous soyons, | | nous ayons été, | |
| vous soyez, | | vous ayez été, | |
| ils soient, | | ils aient été; | |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | | <i>Pluperfect.</i> | |
| (Que) Je fusse, | } <i>I might be, etc.¹</i> | (Que) J'eusse été, | } <i>I might have been, etc.¹</i> |
| tu fusses, | | tu eusses été, | |
| il fût, | | il eût été, | |
| nous fussions, | | nous eussions été, | |
| vous fussiez, | | vous eussiez été, | |
| ils fussent, | | ils eussent été, | |

The tenses of these verbs may be shortly learnt thus :

Avoir, ayant, eu, j'ai, j'avais, j'eus, j'aurai, j'aurais, aie, que j'aie, que j'eusse.

Être, étant, été, je suis, j'étais, je fus, je serai, je serais, sois, que je sois, que je fusse.

¹ These are conventional translations of French tenses and cannot always be so rendered in English.

XVI. THE REGULAR VERBS CONJUGATED

149.

| I | II | III |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| INFINITIVE MOOD. | | |
| <i>Present.</i> | | |
| Donner, give. | Finir, finish. | Rendre, render. |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | | |
| Avoir donné | Avoir fini | Avoir rendu |
| PARTICIPLES. | | |
| <i>Present.</i> | | |
| Donnant | Finissant | Rendant |
| <i>Past.</i> | | |
| Donné | Fini | Rendu |
| INDICATIVE MOOD. | | |
| <i>Present.</i> | | |
| je donne | finis | rends |
| tu donnes | finis | rends |
| il donne | finit | rend |
| nous donnons | finissons | rendons |
| vous donnez | finissez | rendez |
| ils donnent | finissent | rendent |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | | |
| je donnais | finissais | rendais |
| tu donnais | finissais | rendais |
| il donnait | finissait | rendait |
| nous donnions | finissions | rendions |
| vous donniez | finissiez | rendiez |
| ils donnaient | finissaient | rendaient |
| <i>Past Definite.</i> | | |
| je donnai | finis | rendis |
| tu donnas | finis | rendis |
| il donna | finit | rendit |
| nous donnâmes | finîmes | rendîmes |
| vous donnâtes | finîtes | rendîtes |
| ils donnèrent | finirent | rendirent |

| | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------|
| | <i>Future.</i> | |
| je donnerai | finirai | rendrai |
| tu donneras | finiras | rendras |
| il donnera | finira | rendra |
| nous donnerons | finirons | rendrons |
| vous donnerez | finirez | rendrez |
| ils donneront | finiront | rendront |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------|
| | <i>Present.</i> | |
| je donnerais | finirais | rendrais |
| tu donnerais | finirais | rendrais |
| il donnerait | finirait | rendrait |
| nous donnerions | finirions | rendrions |
| vous donneriez | finiriez | rendriez |
| ils donneraient | finiraient | rendraient |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| donne | finis | rends |
| (qu'il donne) | (qu'il finisse) | (qu'il rende) |
| donnons | finissons | rendons |
| donnez | finissez | rendez |
| (qu'ils donnent) | (qu'ils finissent) | (qu'ils rendent) |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| | <i>Present.</i> | |
| (Que) je donne | finisse | rende |
| tu donnes | finisses | rendes |
| il donne | finisse | rende |
| nous donnions | finissions | rendions |
| vous donniez | finissiez | rendiez |
| ils donnent | finissent | rendent |
| | <i>Imperfect.</i> | |
| (Que) je donnasse | finisse | rendisse |
| tu donnasses | finisses | rendisses |
| il donnât | finît | rendît |
| nous donnassions | finissions | rendissions |
| vous donnassiez | finissiez | rendissiez |
| ils donnassent | finissent | rendissent |

COMPOUND TENSES.

150. *Indicative, Perfect.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>I have given, etc.</i> | <i>I have finished, etc.</i> | <i>I have rendered, etc.</i> |
| J'ai donné | J'ai fini | J'ai rendu |
| Tu as donné | Tu as fini | Tu as rendu |
| Il a donné | Il a fini | Il a rendu |
| N. avons donné | N. avons fini | N. avons rendu |
| V. avez donné | V. avez fini | V. avez rendu |
| Ils ont donné | Ils ont fini | Ils ont rendu |

Pluperfect.

J'avais donné, etc.

Past Anterior.

J'eus donné, etc.

Future Perfect.

J'aurai donné, etc.

Conditional Perfect.

J'aurais donné, etc.

Subjunctive Perfect.

(Que) J'aie donné, etc.

Subjunctive Pluperfect.

(Que) J'eusse donné, etc.

The tenses of the verbs of the three conjugations may be shortly learnt thus :

Donner, donnant, donné, je donne, je donnais, je donnai, je donnerai, je donnerais, donne, que je donne, que je donnasse.

Finir, finissant, fini, je finis, je finissais, je finis, je finirai, je finirais, finis, que je finisse, que je finisse.

Rendre, rendant, rendu, je rends, je rendais, je rendis, je rendrai, je rendrais, rends, que je rende, que je rendisse.

NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION

151. To conjugate verbs **negatively**, place **ne** before the verb and **pas** directly after. In compound tenses, *pas* is placed after the auxiliary. Similarly the other negative adverbs: *jamais* (never); *guère* (scarcely); *plus* (no more); *point* (not at all); *ni . . . ni* (neither . . . nor); and *rien* (nothing).

I have not, etc.

Je n'ai pas
Tu n'as pas
Il n'a pas

I shall not have given, etc.

Je n'aurai pas donné
Tu n'auras pas donné
Il n'aura pas donné

and so on.

152. To conjugate a verb **interrogatively**, invert the verb and pronoun, and connect by a hyphen :

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Am I ? etc.</i> | <i>Had I finished ? etc.</i> |
| Suis-je ? | Avais-je fini ? |
| Es-tu ? | Avais-tu fini ? |
| Est-il ? etc. | Avait-il fini ? etc. |

153. To conjugate a verb **interrogatively** and **negatively**, combine the two forms :

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Was I not ?</i> | <i>Should I not have rendered ?</i> |
| N'étais-je pas ? | N'aurais-je pas rendu ? |
| N'étais-tu pas ? etc. | N'aurais-tu pas rendu ? etc. |

154. *Obs.* i. When the first person ends in *e* mute, an acute accent is placed on the *e* in the interrogative form: donné-je ? So too—dussé-je, puissé-je.

ii. It is more usual however to use *est-ce que*, the verb and its subject being placed in the *affirmative* order: *est-ce que je donne ?* *Est-ce que* must also be used in the 1st person pres. indicative (1) of monosyllable forms: *est-ce que je cours ?* (though *ai-je*, *puis-je*, *suis-je*, *sais-je*, *vois-je*, *dois-je*, *dis-je* are admissible), and (2) of verbs in *-ger*—*est-ce que je mange ?*

iii. When the subject is a noun, the noun is put first and the inverted form of the verb with the pronoun is used. *E.g.* *Votre père est-il arrivé ?*—*A quelle heure le train part-il ?* (*à quelle heure part le train ?* is also correct).

iv. When the 3rd person singular ends in a vowel, a euphonic *t* is inserted, thus—*donne-t-il*, *rendra-t-il ?*

Obs. Other instances of **Inversion** are :

i. When *peut-être*, *aussi*, *à peine*, *encore*, *ainsi* stand first in the sentence, use the inverted (interrogative) form, thus :

A peine se fut-il levé. Aussi le matelot est-il sorti.

ii. In *dussé-je*, *puissé-je*, etc., inversion gives force of "if" : *Je le ferai*, *dussé-je attirer sa haine* = *even if I should* . . .

(*Puissiez-vous trouver toujours de bon amis !—may you find, etc. !*)

iii. Inversion with verbs of *saying*, *writing*, *thinking*, etc., when introducing direct speech—*E.g.* *Levez-vous, s'écria-t-il.*—*Quelle heure est-il ? demanda-t-elle.*—*Quel dommage ! pensa-t-il.*

XVII. THE PASSIVE VOICE CONJUGATED

155. (The Passive Voice is formed by *être* and the past participle. The past participle must agree in gender and number with the subject, but remember that *été* is always invariable.)

INFINITIVE.

| <i>Present.</i> | | <i>Perfect.</i> | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| Être | aimé, <i>to be loved</i> | Avoir été | aimé, <i>to have been loved</i> |
| | aimée | | aimée |
| | aimés | | aimés |
| | aimées | | aimées |

[Hereafter the verb is conjugated *masculinè* only.]

PARTICIPLES.

Étant aimé, *being loved* Ayant été aimé, *having been loved*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Perfect.</i> |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Je suis aimé, <i>I am loved, etc.</i> | J'ai été aimé, <i>I have been</i> |
| Tu es aimé | Tu as été aimé [<i>loved, etc.</i>] |
| Il est aimé | Il a été aimé |
| Nous sommes aimés | Nous avons été aimés |
| Vous êtes aimés (aimé) | Vous avez été aimés (aimé) |
| Ils sont aimés | Ils ont été aimés |

| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Pluperfect.</i> |
|--|---|
| J'étais aimé, <i>I was (being) loved</i> | J'avais été aimé, <i>I had been loved</i> |
| Nous étions aimés, etc. | Nous avions été aimés, etc. |

| <i>Past Definite.</i> | <i>Past Anterior.</i> |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Je fus aimé, <i>I was loved</i> | J'eus été aimé, <i>I had been loved</i> |

| <i>Future.</i> | <i>Future Perfect.</i> |
|--|--|
| Je serai aimé, <i>I shall be loved</i> | J'aurai été aimé, <i>I shall have been loved</i> |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Perfect.</i> |
|--|--|
| Je serais aimé, <i>I should be loved</i> | J'aurais été aimé, <i>I should have been loved</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sois aimé, *be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.(Que) Je sois aimé,
*I (may) be loved**Perfect.*(Que) J'aie été aimé,
*I (may) have been loved**Imperfect.*(Que) Je fusse aimé,
*I (might) be loved**Pluperfect.*(Que) J'eusse été aimé,
I (might) have been loved

THE PASSIVE VOICE

156. It may be said that the **Passive Voice is less frequently used** in French than in English. Three ways of avoiding the Passive are :

1. The use of *on* with the active. As—On parle français, *French is spoken.*
2. The use of the reflexive verb. As—Ici se vendent des livres d'occasion, *second-hand books are sold here.*
3. Turn by the active voice. As—Tout le monde le hait, *he is hated by all.*

For the English passive with *faire*, etc., see § 187.

157. Intransitive verbs, and verbs constructed with *de* and *à* (gen. and dat.) have no passive in French. Care must be taken when translating such expressions as—"He was attended to," "He was given a prize," "They are laughed at," "He was pleased with that," "I have been told," "I was ordered," etc. These in French are :

On s'occupa de lui. On lui donna un prix. On se moque d'eux.
Cela lui a plu. On m'a dit. On m'a donné l'ordre.

Obéir, pardonner, and commander are used in the Passive.

XVIII. REFLEXIVE VERB CONJUGATED

158. (The auxiliary is *être*. In compound tenses the past participle is variable if the reflexive pronoun is accusative ; if the pronoun is dative, the past participle agrees only when preceded by the direct object.)

INFINITIVE.

*Present.*Se laver, *to wash oneself**Perfect.*S'être lavé, *to have washed oneself.*

PARTICIPLES.

Se lavant, *washing oneself*Lavé, *washed*; s'étant lavé, *having washed oneself*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*Je me lave, *I wash myself*

Tu te laves

Il se lave

Elle se lave

Nous nous lavons

Vous vous lavez

Ils se lavent

Elles se lavent

*Perfect.*Je me suis lavé (lavée), *I have washed myself*

Tu t'es lavé (lavée)

Il s'est lavé

Elle s'est lavée [(lavées)]

Nous nous sommes lavés

Vous vous êtes lavé(s) or lavée(s)

Ils se sont lavés

Elles se sont lavées

Imperfect. Je me lavais, etc. *Pluperfect.* Je m'étais lavé, etc.*Past Definite.* Je me lavai, etc. *Past Anterior.* Je me fus lavé, etc.*Future.* Je me laverai, etc. *Future Perfect.* Je me serai lavé, etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Present. Je me laverais, etc. *Perfect.* Je me serais lavé, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Lave-toi

(Qu'il se lave)

Lavons-nous

Lavez-vous

(Qu'ils se lavent)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (Que) Je me lave, etc. *Perfect.* (Que) Je me sois lavé, etc.*Imperfect.* (Que) Je me lavasse, etc. *Pluperfect.* (Que) Je me fusse lavé, etc.

159. Conjugated Negatively:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>Present.</i> Je ne me lave pas | <i>Perfect.</i> Je ne me suis pas lavé |
| Tu ne te laves pas | Tu ne t'es pas lavé |
| Il ne se lave pas, etc. | Il ne s'est pas lavé, etc. |

160. Conjugated Interrogatively:

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Imperfect.</i> Me lavais-je? | <i>Pluperfect.</i> M'étais-je lavé? |
| Te lavais-tu? | T'étais-tu lavé? |
| Se lavait-il? etc. | S'était-il lavé? etc. |

161. Conjugated Negatively-Interrogatively:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>Future.</i> Ne me laverai-je pas? | <i>Fut. Perf.</i> Ne me serai-je pas lavé? |
| Ne te laveras-tu pas? | Ne te seras-tu pas lavé? |
| Ne se lavera-t-il pas? | Ne se sera-t-il pas lavé? |
| etc. | etc. |

162. Imperative conjugated negatively. Pronoun *before* the verb.

Ne te lave pas
 (Qu'il ne se lave pas)
 Ne nous lavons pas
 Ne vous lavez pas
 (Qu'ils ne se lavent pas)

REFLEXIVE VERBS

163. Reflexive Verbs are either naturally reflexive or active verbs used reflexively. The past participle in compound tenses of the former is variable; in the latter its inflection depends on the position of the direct object. *E.g.* Elle s'est évanouie.—Il s'est donné de la peine.—Les peines qu'il s'est données. (See § 209.)

164. The reflexive pronoun often has a **reciprocal** force. *E.g.* Aimons-nous, *let us love one another.* (See § 87.)

165. Reflexive Verbs often translate the English **passive** or **neuter** Verbs. *E.g.* Le phare se voit de loin, *the lighthouse is seen from afar.*

—La porte s'ouvre, *the door opens*.—Les câbles se rompirent, *the cables broke*. (Cp. Lat. *se vertit, he turns*.)

166. Reflexive Verbs are more common in French than in English. The following equivalents of English active or neuter verbs should be carefully noticed :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| s'arrêter, <i>to stop</i> | s'enrhumer, <i>catch cold</i> |
| se lever, <i>to get up</i> | se battre, <i>fight</i> |
| se coucher, <i>go to bed</i> | s'évanouir, <i>faint</i> |
| s'éveiller, <i>awake</i> | s'égarer, <i>lose one's way</i> |
| s'endormir, <i>go to sleep</i> | se remettre, <i>recover (from illness)</i> |
| se souvenir de, <i>remember</i> | se tromper, <i>make a mistake</i> |
| se rappeler, <i>remember</i> | se porter, <i>be (of health)</i> |
| se moquer de, <i>make game of</i> | se promener, <i>take a walk</i> ¹ |
| se servir de, <i>use</i> | se conduire, <i>behave</i> . |

E.g. Arrêtez-vous, *stop!*—Elle s'est endormie, *she has gone to sleep*.
—Je m'en souviens, *I remember it*.—Je ne m'en suis pas servi, *I have not used it*.—Il s'en moque, *he makes game of it (does not care a straw)*.
—Ne vous moquez pas de lui.—Allez vous coucher.—Je vais me promener.—Comment vous portez-vous?

XIX. IMPERSONAL VERBS

167. Impersonal Verbs proper have only a 3rd person singular, and generally take *avoir* as auxiliary.

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Il y a, <i>there is, there are</i> | Il pleut, <i>it is raining</i> |
| Il y a eu, <i>there has (have) been</i> | Il neige, <i>it is snowing</i> |
| Il n'y a pas, <i>there is (are) not</i> | Il tonne, <i>it thunders</i> |
| Y a-t-il, <i>is (are) there?</i> | Il gèle, <i>it freezes</i> |
| N'y a-t-il pas, <i>is (are) there not?</i> | Il dégele, <i>it thaws</i> |
| Il faut, <i>it is necessary</i> | Il importe, <i>it is important</i> |

Add also—Voilà, voici, *there is, here is*.

168. Other verbs are also **made impersonal**: they keep the 3rd singular invariably. *E.g.* Il est arrivé deux régiments d'infanterie.—Il ne m'en reste que deux.—Il était une fois deux princesses.

Impersonal Verbs are also formed of adjectives with the verb *être*. *E.g.* Il est impossible de travailler par cette chaleur.—Il est bien rare qu'un nouveau bonheur ne détruise pas un ancien bonheur. (See § 230.)

¹ Se promener en voiture (en automobile), *to go for a drive*; se promener à cheval, *to go for a ride*; se promener en bateau, *to go for a row, or a sail*.

169. Omission of *il* in certain verbs.N'importe, *no matter.*Qu'importe, *what matter?*Tant s'en faut, *far from it.*Beaucoup s'en faut que, . . . *far from . . .*D'où vient que, . . . *how is it that . . . ?*Reste à savoir, *it remains to be seen.*Peu s'en fallut qu'il ne me trahît,
*was within an ace of . . .*Soit dit en passant, *be it said in passing.*Comme bon lui semble, *as it seems good to him.*M'est avis (familiar), *I think.*Otez cinq de six, reste un, *(take) five from six, leaves one.*

170. Il y a ; Voici ; Voilà.

Qu'y a-t-il? Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?
*what's the matter?*Combien y a-t-il d'ici à Douvres?
*how far is it to Dover?*Il y a quinze milles, *it is 15 miles.*Il y a de longues années de cela,
*that was long years ago.*Voilà une heure que je t'attends,
*I've been waiting an hour for you.*Maintenant que vous voici seul,
*now that you are alone.*Me voici! *here I am!* Le voilà!
*there he is!*Il y avait trois vieilles filles de Lee,
*there were three old maids of Lee.*Elle est morte il y a deux mois, *she died two months ago.*Il y a trois jours que je ne l'ai vu,
*it is three days since I saw him.*Voilà la nuit qui vient, *night is approaching.*Comme vous voilà solennel! *how solemn you are!*La pendule que voici, *the clock here.*

XX. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

SOME PECULIARITIES OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

171. i. Verbs in **-ger** take an *e* after *g* before *a* and *o*, in order to preserve the soft sound of the *g*. Thus: manger, mangeant, mangeons, mangeais, etc.

172. ii. Verbs in **-cer** take a cedilla under the *c* before *a* and *o*, to preserve the soft sound of the *c*. Thus: forcer, forçant, forçons, forçais, etc. (Cp. the *ç* before *o* and *u* in verbs like *recevoir*: reçu, aperçois, etc.)

173. iii. Verbs in **-eler, -eter**, double *l* or *t* before a mute *e* (1, 2, 3 sing. and 3 plur. pres. indic. and subj.; future, and conditional; and imperat. 2 sing.). Thus: appeler,—appelle, -es, -e, -ent, appellerai, etc. jeter,—jette, -es, -e, -ent, jetterai, etc.

But a few verbs—*acheter, celer, geler, peler*, and a few more—instead of doubling the *l* or *t*, require a grave accent over the *e* as in the next rule : *e.g.* *achète, gèle, cèlerai*, etc.

Other similar verbs are—*déceler, bourreler, dégeler, marteler, harceler, modeler, écarteler, épousseter, racheter*.

174. iv. Verbs in -emer, -ener, -eser, -ever (*i.e.* having *e* mute in the penultimate, and any other consonant than *l* or *t* preceding the termination -*er*), take an *è* before an *e* mute. *E.g.* *Mener, peser, achever*,—*je mène, il pèse, j'achèverai*, etc.

175. v. Verbs with an accented é in penultimate retain the *é* in the future and conditional, but elsewhere follow the previous rule, § 174. *Espérer*,—*j'espère, espérerai*, etc.

176. vi. Verbs in -ayer, -oyer, -uyer change *y* into *i* before *e* mute. *E.g.* *payer, je paie ; aboyer, il aboie ; essuyer, ils essuieront*.

Obs. i. Verbs in -**ayer**, however, often retain the *y*. Thus : *je paie or paye ; je balaierai or balayerai*.

ii. Verbs in -**eyer** retain the *y*. *E.g.* *grasseyer, je grasseye*.

iii. Verbs of other conjugations having pres. participle in -**yant** are subject to the same rule. Thus : *Fuir, fuyant, que je fuie ; voir, voyant, que je voie*.

177. Verbs in -ier, -éer are quite regular, but require some care in conjugating. *E.g.* *Prier*,—*nous priions, vous prieiez* (impf. ind. and pres. subj.) ; *Créer*,—*créé, f. créée* (past. part.), *je crée, je créerai*, etc.

SECOND CONJUGATION

178. The following verbs in -**ir**,—*dormir, to sleep ; sentir, feel ; mentir, lie ; servir, serve ; partir, start ; sortir, go out ; se repentir, repent*—are thus conjugated :

Infinitive, dormir. Pres. Part., dormant. Past Part., dormi.

Pres. Indic.

Je dors

tu dors

il dort

nous dormons

vous dormez

ils dorment

Impf.

je dormais

Past Def.

je dormis

Fut.

je dormirai

Conditional.

je dormirais

Imperat.

dors

Subjunctive.

Pres. je dorme

Impf. je dormisse

So also :

Sentir, sentant, senti, je sens, sentais, sentis, sentirai, sentirais, sens, sente, sentisse.

Mentir, mentant, menti, je mens, mentais, mentis, mentirai, mentirais, mens, mente, mentisse.

Servir, servant, servi, je sers, servais, servis, servirai, servirais, sers, serve, servisse.

Partir, partant, parti, je pars, partais, partis, partirai, partirais, pars, parte, partisse.

Sortir, sortant, sorti, je sors, sortais, sortis, sortirai, sortirais, sors, sorte, sortisse.

Se repentir, se repentant, repenti, je me repens, repentai, repentis, repentirai, repentirais, repens-toi, repente, repentisse.

XXI. THE AUXILIARY VERBS

179. Avoir, with the past participle, forms the compound tenses of most verbs, transitive or intransitive.—J'ai donné, il a péri.

Être is the auxiliary (i) of the *Passive*,—Je suis aimé, ils ont été trahis ; and (ii) of the *Reflexive Verb*,—Je me suis lavé, nous nous sommes trompés ; while (iii) a certain number of *Neuter Verbs* and *Verbs of Motion* are also conjugated with *être* :

| | | | |
|---------|--------|---------|-----------|
| Aller | Entrer | Partir | Retourner |
| Arriver | Mourir | Rentrer | Sortir |
| Décéder | Naître | Rester | Tomber |

and Venir with its compounds (Revenir, Devenir, etc., except Prévenir).

N.B.—Marcher, courir, voyager, sauter, voler, though indicating *motion*, take *avoir*.

180. Many Neuter Verbs, *e.g.* Accourir, Apparaître, Disparaître, Demeurer, Descendre, Échouer, Monter, Passer, take *avoir* or *être* according as they denote an *action* or a *resulting state*. Descendre, Monter, Entrer, Rentrer, Sortir, are sometimes used as transitive verbs, and in that case take *avoir*—*e.g.*

Je suis descendu dans la mine, *have gone down (and am there)*,
J'ai descendu les bagages, *I have brought the luggage down*.

La rivière a monté d'un mètre, *has risen three feet.*
 Il a rentré les chaises, *has taken the chairs back into the house.*
 Il a demeuré deux ans en France, *has resided.*
 Il est demeuré en chemin, *has lagged, remained behind.*

Note too the auxiliary of these three common verbs :

Convenir : with *avoir*, = to suit ; with *être*, = to agree.
 Échapper : „ „ to escape ; „ „ be said inadvertently.
 Expirer : „ „ to die ; „ „ come to an end.

E.g. Cette place lui a convenu. Ils sont convenus du prix.
 Le duc a échappé de la prison. Ce mot lui est échappé.
 Il a expiré en nous maudissant. Le bail est déjà expiré.

181. Idiomatic uses of Avoir and Être.

For *avoir chaud*, etc., see § 21.

| | |
|--|--|
| J'ai l'intention d'aller à Lyon, <i>I intend going to Lyons.</i> | Vous avez beau parler, <i>it is no use your talking.</i> |
| Il a envie de manger ces gâteaux, <i>he wants to eat these cakes.</i> | Il a l'air triste, <i>he looks sad.</i> |
| Il a besoin d'argent, <i>he wants some money.</i> | Il n'est plus, <i>he is dead.</i> |
| Nous avons peur des vagues, <i>we were afraid of the waves.</i> | Ainsi soit-il ! <i>so be it !</i> |
| Pourquoi aviez-vous honte de moi ? <i>why were you ashamed of me ?</i> | Soit ! <i>let it be so ! granted !</i> |
| Ils avaient pitié d'eux, <i>they had pity on them.</i> | Ce livre est à moi, <i>belongs to me.</i> |
| Si vous avez sommeil, <i>if you are sleepy.</i> | Il a vingt ans, <i>he is twenty.</i> |
| | Il a les cheveux longs, <i>his hair is long.</i> |
| | Il était une fois un prince, <i>there was once upon a time a prince.</i> |

182. Auxiliaries of Tense ; venir, aller, etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| Je viens desortir, <i>I have just gone out.</i> | On était en train de bâtir la maison, <i>the house was being built.</i> |
| Il venait de parler, <i>he had just spoken.</i> | Il est sur le point de sortir, <i>he is about to go out.</i> |
| Je vais voir, <i>I am going to see (=future).</i> | |

183. A few idiomatic uses of Venir, Aller.

| | |
|--|---|
| Venez voir les tableaux, <i>come and see.</i> | Le va-et-vient, <i>coming and going.</i> |
| S'il vient à passer, <i>if he happens to pass.</i> | Comment allez-vous ? <i>how are you ?</i> |
| Il me vient une idée, <i>an idea occurs to me.</i> | Les affaires vont mal, <i>business is bad.</i> |
| D'où vient que... ? <i>how is it that... ?</i> | Cela vous va-t-il ? <i>does that suit you ?</i> |
| En venir aux mains, <i>to come to blows.</i> | Cet habit lui va bien, <i>suits, fits him well.</i> |
| Je suis venu à bout de le faire, <i>I have managed to do it.</i> | Il y va de la vie, <i>his life is at stake.</i> |
| | Des billets d'aller et retour, <i>return tickets.</i> |
| | L'aller seulement, <i>single ticket only.</i> |

184. The English Auxiliaries, May, Might, Must, etc. (*shall, will, would, should, future or conditional, are not here given*).

May I go out? *Puis-je sortir?*

May you be successful! *Puissiez-vous réussir!*

I am to start at eight, *Je dois partir à huit heures.*

Am I to believe that? *Dois-je croire cela?*

Ask him whether he **will** go, *Demandez-lui s'il veut aller.*

You must (surely) be tired, *Vous devez être fatigué.*

He must have lost it, *Il a dû le perdre.*

We must start before 10, *Il faut partir avant dix heures.*

We ought to pay him a visit, *Nous devrions lui faire visite.*

I should like to know, *Je voudrais bien savoir.*

You should not talk like that, *Vous ne devriez pas parler de la sorte.*

If you should¹ see him, *Si vous le voyez.*

Shall I tell him? *Faut-il que je lui dise?*

I cannot tell you, *Je ne saurais vous dire.*

Can't you be quiet! *Ne sauriez-vous vous taire!*

Nobody can tell, *Personne n'en sait rien.*

He got a box made, *Il fit faire une boîte.*

He got angry, *Il se fâcha.*

It is getting late, *Il se fait tard.*

185. Savoir and Pouvoir. *Can* in the sense of *know how to* is *savoir*; denoting *physical* ability, is *pouvoir*. Thus—*Je sais nager.*—*Je ne peux pas marcher, parce que j'ai mal aux pieds.*

186. Some Idiomatic uses of Vouloir, Devoir, Pouvoir, Savoir, Laisser.

Si vous voulez bien, *if you don't mind.*

Voulez-vous bien me dire, *please tell me.*

Veuillez m'indiquer l'église, *kindly direct me to the church.*

Que voulez-vous dire? *what do you mean?*

Je veux absolument que vous le lisiez, *I insist on your reading it.*

Ce garçon lui en veut, *bears him a grudge.*

Il veut que je l'aie fait exprès, *he declares, will have it, that I did it on purpose.*

Le malheur a voulu que... *as luck would have it...*

Je ne vous savais pas en ville, *I did not know you were in town.*

Il s'occupe de je ne sais quoi, *something or other.*

Il lit je ne sais quel livre, *some book or other.*

Pas que je sache, *not that I know.*

La brave fille qui devait délivrer la France, *who was (destined) to...*

Je ne peux pas m'empêcher de rire, *I can't help laughing.*

Je n'en puis plus, *I am exhausted.*

Je n'en puis mais, *I can't help it.*

C'est on ne peut mieux, *it's excellent.*

Il se peut que... *it is possible that...*

Laissez-moi tranquille, *leave me alone.*

Cette chose laisse à désirer, *leaves much to be desired.*

Il se laisse aller à sa douleur, *he gives way to his grief.*

¹ Si = "if" does not take the future or conditional.

Notice especially the Conditional of *Vouloir, Pouvoir, Devoir*.

Je voudrais bien lui serrer la main, *I should like to shake hands with him.*

J'aurais bien voulu le voir, *I should like to have seen him.*

Vous ne devriez pas rester dehors, *you should not remain out of doors.*

Vous auriez dû le chercher plus longtemps, *you ought to have looked for it longer.*

Nous pourrions l'attraper si nous marchions vite, *we might catch him if we walked quick.*

Nous n'aurions pas pu l'empêcher de sortir, *we could not have prevented him from going out.*

FAIRE

187. Faire with infinitive forms causative verbs. There are two constructions to be noticed.¹

a. Je fais venir mon fils, *I get, cause, make my son to come.*

Je fais chanter ma fille, *I get, etc., my daughter to sing.*

b. Je ferai arrêter le voleur, *I shall cause, etc., the robber to be arrested.*

Je ferai arrêter le voleur aux (par les) gendarmes, *I shall get the gendarmes to arrest the robber.*

In *a*, the Infinitive is intransitive, or an active verb used intransitively, and *mon fils*, *ma fille* are the accusative subject of the infinitive.

In *b*, the infinitive is transitive, *le voleur* is the object of the infinitive, and the agent (person) is expressed by the dative (*à*), or by *par*. This is conveniently translated by the English passive, but remember

(i) always use the *active* infinitive, not the *passive* infinitive or past participle in French, and

(ii) do not express the *agent* by *à* (or *par*) except in the case where the infinitive is accompanied by its own object.

* * The infinitive must immediately follow *faire*.

Examples—Je ferai ouvrir la fenêtre.—Il a fait bâtir une maison.—Faites fermer la porte.—Je ferai danser la poupée.—Vous avez fait rire les enfants.—Je ferai raccommoder la boîte au menuisier.

188. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns with Faire + Infinitive are placed before *faire*, except in the imperative affirmative, when they follow *faire* and are joined to it by a hyphen.

¹ Compare the Latin construction of *curo* with gerundive—Naves reficiendas curavit: and (more like the French) the German use of *lassen*—Er liess es machen.

Examples are—

Cela me fait rougir, *that makes me blush.*

Je lui ferai ouvrir la porte, *I will get him to open the door.*

Faites-moi savoir, *let me know.*

Faites-la chanter, *get her to sing, or, get, have it sung.*

Faites-le venir, *send for him.*

Faites-le-lui raccommoder, *get him to mend it.*

Ne le faites pas fermer, *do not have it closed.*

Je le lui ai fait raccommoder, *I got him to mend it.*

Un bruit se fit entendre, *a noise was heard, made itself heard.*

Il s'est fait photographier, *he got himself photographed.*

Faites-vous couper les cheveux, *get your hair cut.*

Obs. i. There is a certain ambiguity in the sentence—le père a fait écrire une lettre à son fils=*the father made his son write a letter, or, caused a letter to be written to his son.* This ambiguity can be avoided by using *par* instead of *à* to express the agent.

ii. Sometimes the object of the infinitive is a substantival sentence ; as—Je n'ai pas fait comprendre aux autres qu'il fallait partir.

iii. When *faire* governs the infinitive of a reflexive verb, the reflexive pronoun is generally omitted. Thus—Il la fit asseoir.—Tu me fais souvenir qu'elle a suivi le traître.

iv. *Faire* + Infinitive makes a neuter verb active :—E.g. Faites bouillir l'eau, *boil the water.*—Faisant sonner son argent, *rattling his money.*—Faire venir, *to send for, etc., etc.*

189. The verbs of sense, *Entendre, Voir, Sentir, Regarder* and *Laisser* follow the same construction as *Faire* :

Je fais bâtir une maison, *I have a house built.*

Je vois tuer les moutons, *I see the sheep killed.*

Je l'entends chanter, *I hear him sing, or, I hear it sung.*

Il se laisse prendre, *he lets himself be captured.*

Je le lui entends chanter, *I hear him sing it.*

J'entends chuchoter, *I hear (someone) whispering.*

But often the accusative, not the dative, may express the agent, if there is no ambiguity. E.g. Nous le (*or* lui) laissons fermer la porte.—Ce furent les dernières paroles que je l'entendis prononcer.—J'ai vu l'acteur jouer cette comédie.

190. *Faire* and *Rendre* = *to make*, with double accusative. *Rendre* is used if the complement of the verb is an adjective ; *faire*, if it is a noun. E.g. Cette nouvelle l'a rendue heureuse.—Il a fait son fils avocat.—C'est la nature qui le fit poète.

It is, however, more usual to say : Il a fait de son fils un avocat.—Il veut faire de sa fille une baronne.—Il en a fait un avocat (Cp. Eng., *to make a man of him.*)

191. Further examples and **idiomatic** uses of *Faire*.

| | |
|---|--|
| Il fait beau temps, <i>the weather is fine.</i> | Il fait la sourde oreille, <i>turns a deaf ear.</i> |
| Il faisait du vent, <i>it was windy.</i> | Ne faites pas le sourd, <i>don't play the deaf man.</i> |
| Il fait chaud, <i>it is warm.</i> | Nous avons fait 2 milles, <i>we had gone 2 miles.</i> |
| Il faisait nuit, <i>it was dark.</i> | Ne me faites pas attendre, <i>don't keep me waiting.</i> |
| Il fait semblant de ne pas voir, <i>he pretends not to see.</i> | Je serai de mon mieux pour . . . |
| Faites-moi voir quelque chose, <i>show me something.</i> | <i>I'll do my best to . . .</i> |
| Il cherche à se faire remarquer, <i>he tries to make himself conspicuous.</i> | Vous feriez mieux de partir, <i>you had better leave.</i> |
| Je peux me faire comprendre, <i>I can make myself understood.</i> | Ne vous faites pas tant prier, <i>don't take so much asking.</i> |
| Qu'est-ce que cela me fait? <i>what does that matter to me?</i> | |
| Il ne fait que rire, <i>does nothing but laugh.</i> | |

XXII. THE TENSES AND PARTICIPLES

192. The very common English **periphrastic tense-forms** have no direct equivalent in French. Thus the one form *je parle* represents the English, I speak, I am speaking, I do speak.

So *je parlais* = I spoke, I was speaking, I used to speak.

je parlai = I spoke, I did speak.

j'ai parlé = I spoke, I have spoken, I have been speaking: and so on.

French, however, makes up for this deficiency in various ways, as the following phrases show:

I am going out soon, *je vais sortir bientôt.*

He was writing when I came in, *il était en train d'écrire, etc.*

You do know this gentleman? *tu connais donc ce monsieur?*

Do sit down, *asseyez-vous donc.*

I do believe he's gone, *je crois vraiment qu'il est parti.*

He used to come and see me often, *il avait coutume de me faire visite.*

He did sit down at last, *en effet, il finit par s'asseoir.*

193. The Present. 1. Is often used in French where English uses a future or a perfect.

Attendez, je reviens tout de suite, *I'll be back in a minute.*

Nous partons dans une heure, *we shall start in an hour.*

Je viens demander de ses nouvelles, *I have come to ask after him.*

Il arrive de Paris, *he has just arrived from Paris.*

2. More frequently in French than in English we have the **Historic Present**, *i.e.* the present for the past, to describe a narrative vividly.

Thus M. Perrichon describes how he rescued his friend from the precipice—*Sur le bord du précipice je lui tends mon bâton. Il s'y cramponne. Je tire, il tire, nous tirons, et, après une lutte insensée, je l'arrache au néant et je le ramène à la face du soleil.*

3. The present is used in sentences introduced by *depuis que, il y a . . . que*, describing an action or state which has begun in the past and is still continuing at the time of speaking or writing (English uses the perfect). Similarly the imperfect is used where English uses the pluperfect.

Je suis à Paris depuis trois jours, } *I have been at Paris for the last three*
 Il y a trois jours que je suis à Paris, } *days (and am still here).*
 Depuis quand êtes-vous ici? *how long have you been here?*
 Il demeure à Londres depuis six mois, *he has been living in London for*
six months.

Cp. Elle était malade depuis quinze jours, *she had been ill a fortnight.*

194. Perfect. 1. Is *par excellence* the past tense of conversation and letter-writing, instead of the Past Definite.

2. In historical narrative its use is much the same as the perfect tense in English: *i.e.* it is used of an action performed in past time without any reference to the sequence of the narrative: the action is past; but the results of the action remain.

Elle fut menée au donjon de Crotoz, qui a depuis disparu sous les sables.

195. Imperfect and Past Definite. The chief difficulty in connection with the correct use of these two past tenses is that the English single past tense, he *stood*, he *sat*, etc., has often to do duty for both.

1. The Imperfect is the tense of *Description*, the Past Definite is the tense of *Narration*, giving the stages of a sequence of events: as in—The butcher stood up (*past def.*), blew his nose (*past def.*), and began (*past def.*) to abuse the member who stood (*impf.*) by the open window.

2. The Imperfect expresses *habitual* or *repeated* action: as—He sat (*i.e.* he used to sit, he would sit) for hours watching the children playing.

3. The Imperfect is, as a general rule, the tense required in indirect questions, conditional clauses, and reported speech (*oratio obliqua*): as in—I asked him why he *did* that.—He would be happy if he *got* it.—I was told that everybody *did* it now.

M. X . . . **était** (descriptive : introductory) horloger de profession. Il se **promenait** (habit) toujours dans le parc, s'il **faisait** (conditional) beau, et il **prenait** (habit : *would take*) avec lui son petit chien qui s'**appelait** (descriptive : adjectival) Togo. Un jour en se promenant il **rencontra** (narrative : 1st stage) un autre horloger, qui lui **en voulait** (descriptive). Les horlogers de la ville **étaient** (narrative checked, to describe state of things) toujours à couteaux tirés. M. X . . . **tira** (narrative : 2nd stage) sa montre pour voir s'il **avait** (indirect question) le temps de lui dire bonjour, mais heureusement il **remarqua** (3rd stage) qu'il **était** ("oratio obliqua") déjà quatre heures. Il **fallait** (virtual "oratio obliqua") rentrer tout de suite. En se tournant il **laissa** tomber (4th stage) sa montre, qui (=et elle) se **brisa** (5th stage) en mille morceaux.

196. Future. 1. In temporal sentences, as in Latin, the verb is in the future if the tense of the principal verb is future.

Je ne serai pas fâché quand il partira, *I shall not be sorry when he leaves.*
Il s'en ira quand il l'aura fini, *he will go when he has finished it.*

2. Expresses probability (same idiom in English).

Pourquoi est-il en retard? C'est qu'il aura manqué le train, *he'll have missed, he has probably missed, the train.*

Tu l'auras piqué sans le vouloir, *you must have, you probably have, offended him unwittingly.*

197. Future and Conditional. *Si* meaning "if" cannot be used with these tenses: the present and imperfect (or corresponding compound tenses) must be used.

Je serai content si vous m'attendez, *I shall be pleased if you will wait for me.*

Je serais content si vous me prêtiez un franc, *I should be glad if you would lend me a franc.*

But when *si* means "whether" (deliberative), the future and conditional are used.

Je me demande s'il pleuvra, *I wonder whether it will rain.*

Je me demandais s'il pleuvrait, *I wondered if it would rain.*

198. Past Anterior.—This tense is little used except in temporal sentences (*dès que, aussitôt que, quand, lorsque*) when the principal verb is in the Past Definite. Thus—Aussitôt qu'il eut dit cela, il disparut pour toujours.

THE CONDITIONAL

199. The Conditional in French serves both as a mood and a tense. It is the *mood* used in the apodosis of a con-

ditional sentence—*e.g.* Je me serais promené s'il n'avait pas fait si lourd; and it represents a historic future tense¹ in indirect statements or indirect questions—*e.g.* Je ne descendrai pas (*direct*). Elle fit dire qu'elle ne descendrait pas (*indirect*). For the conditional in indirect (deliberative) questions, see above, § 197.

Further uses of the Conditional.

1. It asks a question in a polite way: sometimes expresses surprise or indignation, or tones down an abrupt statement. *E.g.* Je ne vois pas Mademoiselle Emmeline: serait-elle malade? *can it be that she is unwell?*—Comment! tu aurais osé!—Selon vous, ma parente aurait conçu et exécuté ce plan atroce.

2. In making a statement which the writer makes not on his own but on some one else's authority (frequently in newspaper reports). *E.g.* D'après une dépêche au *Daily Express* 550 hommes auraient péri.

3. After *quand*, *quand même*, meaning "although," "even if." *E.g.* Quand vous me haïriez je ne m'en plaindrai pas.

4. A curious concessive use. Je le verrais que je ne le croirais pas, *even if I saw it I should not believe it.*—La foudre serait descendue et aurait allumé sa pipe, que je n'aurais pas été plus surpris!

* * The Pluperfect Subjunctive is frequently used for the Conditional Perfect: Il eût mieux valu que . . . *it would have been better* . . .—On eût dit que . . . *one would have said.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND

200. The French verbal form in *-ant* is either a **Verb** (participle and gerund) or an **Adjective**. It does not form compound tenses as the corresponding form in *-ing* does in English, *e.g.* *I was eating* = *je mangeais*.

201. As a **Verb** it marks **action** and is **invariable**. It is used in two ways, either (*a*) simply, by itself, a Present Participle, or (*b*) with the preposition *en*, a Gerund.

(*a*) In its first use, in which it closely resembles the English pres. participle proper, it shows its *verbal* nature in that it may take an object, assume negative and reflexive forms, etc., and can refer either to the *subject* or the *object* of the sentence.

E.g. Les élèves sortant de la classe (*neuter verb*).

Des messieurs dégustant une boisson jaunâtre (*with accusative*).

Elle restait là, ne paraissant rien entendre (*negative*).

¹ Called sometimes the secondary future, or the future in the past.

On voit les voyageurs criant et se bousculant (*reflexive*).

Deux points quelconques étant donnés (*absolute*).

Elle se colla contre le mur, haletante et écoutant si sa mère la cherchait.

(b) Secondly, as a Gerund with *en* (and stronger, *tout en*), it is generally used when it carries with it a causal, temporal, etc., sense (rendered by *through, if, by, though, while*, etc.). It has all its verbal powers as above, but must not be used except in reference to the *subject* of the sentence, though exceptions to this rule are sometimes met with when the sense is obvious.

E.g. Vous allez plus vite *en passant* par les prés (*if you go*).

En se promenant ils discutèrent (*while walking*).

Tout *en parlant* il jeta un regard furtif (*while*).

Tout *en étant* bonne et indulgente, elle a son franc parler (*though*).

L'avarice perd tout *en voulant* trop gagner (*by wishing*).

Il dit *en riant* (*with a laugh*).

Obs. L'appétit vient *en mangeant*.—En déboutonnant son manteau la balle tomba. Such sentences as these, though really ungrammatical, will pass muster because the sense is clear.

202. As an **Adjective**, it marks a **state** or **quality** and is **variable**.

Des couleurs éblouissantes, *dazzling colours*; une étoile filante, *a shooting star*.

Note the difference in spelling in the following participles and adjectives—excellent (part.), excellent (adj.); fatigant (part.), fatigant (adj.); extravagant, extravagant; adhérent, adhérent; fabricant, fabricant; différent, différent; violent, violent; négligeant, négligent; aimant, amant; résidant, résident, etc., etc.

203. The English verbal form in *-ing* is, like the French *-ant*, a Verb (*marching along, singing this song*), and an Adjective (*dazzling colours, a shooting star*): but it is also what the French is not, the Verbal Noun (*seeing is believing*). This in French is the Infinitive: *voir c'est croire* (§ 213).

For other uses, see § 225.

204. Many Present Participles in English are translated:

1. By French *Past Participles*.—Assis, *sitting*; couché, *lying*; endormi, *sleeping*; appuyé, *leaning*; suspendu, *hanging*, etc. La tour penchée de Pise, *the leaning tower of Pisa*.

2. Or by the Relative.—*Le voilà qui vient, there he is coming.*—*Je l'entends qui chante, I hear him singing.*—*Les trompettes des Prussiens qui revenaient de l'exercice.*

3. Or by the *Accusative and Infinitive*.—*Je le vois traverser la cour, I see him crossing the court.*

205. Some Present Participles have become *nouns*. *Le couchant, the setting sun*; *le levant, the east*; *au tournant du chemin*; *un restaurant*; *un penchant*; *des passants, etc.*

Some Present Participles have become *prepositions*—*Pendant, durant, concernant, touchant, suivant.* See § 277.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

206. It is used as an **adjective** or **noun**:—*Ma fille bien aimée.*—*Un amiral très respecté.*—*Les morts.*—*Les assiégés.*

As an adjective it is best placed *after* its noun, as in the examples above, but modern usage allows greater latitude, and it frequently stands *before* its noun (see § 45).

207. When **conjugated** in compound tenses **with Avoir**, it is invariable, unless the direct object (accusative case) precedes, when it agrees with that object in gender and number. Thus—*J'ai chanté une chanson*; *but, la chanson que j'ai chantée.*—*J'ai bâti une maison*; *but, je l'ai bâtie.*

208. When **conjugated with Être** (passive voice, certain neuter verbs, and verbs of motion), it agrees in gender and number with the subject. *E.g. La tour fut détruite.*—*Nous sommes perdus.*—*La pierre est tombée.*—*Les princesses sont arrivées.*

209. Reflexive Verbs in their compound tenses follow the same rule as verbs conjugated with *avoir* (above, § 207). When the reflexive pronoun is accusative, the past participle is variable: when it is dative, the participle is invariable unless preceded by the direct object. Thus—*Nous nous sommes lavés (nous is accusative).*—*Elle s'est fait mal (se is dative).*—*Les peines qu'ils s'étaient données (se dative, que accusative).*

Note the difference between—*elle s'est coupé le doigt (se dative), and elle s'est coupée au doigt (se accusative), she has cut her finger.*

210. A few notes on the Past Participle :

1. There are only three cases in which the object, direct or indirect,

precedes the past participle—personal pronoun, interrogative adjective or pronoun, and relative pronoun. Thus—Je les ai vus.—Quelle ville ont-ils prise?—Les villes qu'ils ont prises.

2. Some verbs take a dative only (participle invariable).—Je leur ai plu.—Cela nous a nui.

3. The past participles **valu, pesé, couru, servi**, when used transitively, are variable; **vécu, ¹ marché, dormi, été**, invariable.

Quels risques il a courus !

Les deux heures que j'ai couru m'ont essoufflé.

Les malles que j'ai pesées.

Les dix kilos que mes malles ont pesé.

Les pensums (*impositions*) que ma paresse m'a valus.

Cette précaution nous (*dative*) a bien servi.

Cet homme nous a bien servis.

Les trois heures qu'il a dormi (que = pendant lesquelles).

Les années qu'il a vécu.

Que de lieues nous avons marché !

N.B.—Les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait.—Les inondations qu'il y a eu.—La somme que cela m'a coûté.

4. The participle preceded by *en* is invariable : but if *en* is accompanied by an adverb of quantity, the participle may vary, though the modern tendency is to leave it uninflected.

Des services, personne ne m'en a rendu.

Autant il a engagé de batailles, autant il en a gagnées *or* gagné.

5. With **combien de, le peu de**, the participle is variable or not, according to sense. Thus—Combien de cerises avez-vous mangées?—Le peu de soins qu'il s'est donné.—Le peu de fortune que mes travaux m'ont acquise.

6. **Excepté**
passé

vu
attendu

ci-inclus
y-compris, etc.,

are invariable when standing before the noun, but agree when following :

Passé la tranchée, *but*, la tranchée passée.

Ci-inclus la réponse, *but*, la réponse ci-incluse.

Excepté les enfants, *but*, les enfants exceptés.

7. Absolute construction, as also in English and Latin (ablative absolute).

Notre curiosité satisfaite, nous nous remîmes en route.

La mère Gérard tricotait, les lunettes posées sur le bout de son nez.

Compare also—Après la paix faite, *after peace had been made*.—Aussitôt le roi arrivé, *as soon as the king arrived*. [Cf. Post urbem conditam. Never since created man (Milton).]

¹ In modern writers *vivre* is often used as a transitive verb, as *les plus délicieuses heures que s'aie jamais vécues*. (Notice that the accusative is cognate.)

211. Past Participle followed by an Infinitive. In compound tenses of *entendre*, *voir*, *regarder*, *laisser*, *sentir* (see § 189) followed by an infinitive, the rule is that the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object, if that object is governed by the participle, but it is invariable if the object is governed by the infinitive.

L'actrice que nous avons *vue* jouer (*que* dir. object of p.p.).

La comédie que nous avons *vu* jouer (*que* dir. object of infinitive).

Je les ai *laissés* partir (*les* dir. object of p.p.).

Peu à peu elle s'est *laissé* persuader (*se* dir. object of persuader).

Tout d'un coup elle s'est *senti* frapper (*se* dir. object of frapper).

Obs. i. The p.p. of *faire* in this construction is invariable, *faire* and infinitive being regarded as a single (causative) verb. Thus—Les cadeaux que j'ai fait venir (*which I sent for*).—Je les ai fait rire.

ii. Participles preceded by an accusative which is governed by an infinitive understood are invariable. Thus—Il a fait toutes les tentatives qu'il a *dû* (understand *faire*).—J'ai rendu tous les services que j'ai *pu*, *voulu* (rendre).

Naturally there is no agreement in—Ma montre que j'ai *oublié* de remonter, because clearly *que* is the dir. object of remonter.

[The past participle followed by an infinitive may now remain invariable even though its preceding direct object be fem. or plur.]

XXIII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD

212. To with English Infinitive nearly always requires a preposition—*de*, *à*, or *pour*—when translating into French. Only in a few cases may the preposition be omitted. The correct choice of these prepositions is often a difficulty.

The principal uses of the **French Infinitive** are :

A. *Without Preposition.*

213. 1. The French **Verbal Noun** is expressed by the Infinitive without preposition. (In English we have two forms of the Verbal Noun: (i) To err is human; (ii) Seeing is believing.)

E.g. Vivre la vie maritime est un plaisir incomparable.

Vous voir lui fera du bien.

Ce is often added with the verb *être*, and *cela* with other verbs.

E.g. Vouloir c'est pouvoir.

Beaucoup lire et ne rien entendre (= *understand*) c'est chasser et ne rien prendre.

Être la mère d'un peuple, cela console de grands cœurs.

Many Infinitives are used as nouns with the article—un être, les vivres, un souvenir, le coucher, le savoir, le savoir-faire, un sourire, le pouvoir, le devoir, etc.

2. The following Verbs require **no Preposition** before the Infinitive constructed after them :

(a) Verbs of Mood—pouvoir, vouloir, devoir, oser, savoir.

(b) Verbs of Motion—all^r, courir, descendre, monter, rentrer, retourner, revenir, venir.¹ Also, envoyer, and être in the perfect and pluperfect tenses in the sense of *aller*.

(c) Croire, désirer, espérer, compter, daigner, préférer, prétendre, sembler, paraître, penser, when the subject of the Infinitive is the same as that of the principal verb.

(d) Avoir beau, falloir, faillir, aimer mieux, valoir mieux.

(e) Faire, laisser, entendre, écouter, sentir, regarder, voir.

§§ 187, 188, 189.

E.g. Que voulez-vous dire ?

J'ai failli tomber (*all but fell*).

Il sait à peine marcher.

Elle a pensé mourir (*nearly died*).

Venez me voir.

Il a beau parler.

Qu'allez-vous faire ?

J'ai été voir la reine (*I have been to see*).

Je crois être dans mon droit.

Il faut suivre ce chemin.

Je compte vous dire adieu.

Il vaut mieux rester que de sortir.

Le prince prétendait ne pas le connaître.

3. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations, Commands.

Que faire ? *What is to be done ?*

Vingt mille francs ! Où les trouver ? A qui écrire ?

Un père sacrifier sa fille !

Aller au pas.—Voir page 20.—S'adresser au concierge.

B. With Preposition.

214. A certain number of Prepositions take the Infinitive. *En*, however, is constructed with the gerund. See § 201.

215. **De.** 1. *De* + Infinitive often represents the Verbal Noun (a) as *subject* or *object* case, after impersonal and other verbs, (b) as *genitive* case, after certain verbs, nouns, or adjectives governing a genitive.

E.g. (a) Il est honteux de mentir (subject case, = mentir est honteux).—Il ne me convient pas de vous le dire (subject case).—Je vous permets de sortir (object case).—Il me demande de le lui montrer (object case).

(b) Incapable d'apprendre.—Défense d'afficher (*stick no bills*).—Il m'accuse d'avoir volé.—Je suis content de vous voir.—Il est fâché de vous le dire (and many adjectives or participles expressing *feeling*).—Il fut chargé de conduire l'armée.

¹ Il vient d'arriver = *he has just arrived*. Il vint à passer = *he happened to pass*.

94 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

Obs. i. A pleonastic *que* is often inserted before the *de*.—C'est chose honteuse *que de* mentir.

ii. Note difference of idiom.—Il jugea à propos de réciter les faits, = he thought *it* right to . . . (no *le* with verb in French).

2. A Historic Infinitive (cp. the Latin construction) with *de* is used for the Indicative, to lend vigour to the action.

E.g. Ainsi dit le Renard, et flatteurs d'applaudir.—Aussitôt les ennemis de s'enfuir et de jeter leurs armes.

216. À. 1. *À* + Infinitive is used after verbs and adjectives denoting *aim*, *tendency*, or the like.

E.g. Il se mit à rire.—J'ai quelque chose à vous raconter.—Il cherche à se faire remarquer.—Prêt à partir.

2. Denotes what the subject is *engaged*, *occupied* in doing.

E.g. Il s'occupe à jouer aux cartes.—Il passe son temps à cueillir des fleurs.—Il est assis à lire un roman.—Un jour j'étais à me promener à cheval.

* * Do not confuse *à* + infinitive with *en* + present participle. Thus—il s'amuse à travailler = *he amuses himself by working*; il s'amuse en travaillant = *he amuses himself while he works*.

3. Indicates *instrument*, *measure*, with idea of *judging by*.

E.g. A vous entendre, tout va mal (*according to you*).—Rien qu'à le regarder, on dirait . . . (*merely to look at him, one would say*).—A tout prendre (*on the whole*).

4. Something like the Latin Gerundive, *à* + active infinitive may often be rendered by the English passive.

E.g. Voilà un homme à envier (*a man to be envied*).—Une maison à louer (*to be let*).—C'est à craindre.—Le français est difficile à apprendre [but, il est difficile *d'*apprendre le français].—Un fardeau lourd à porter.

5. An adverbial and adjectival use with verbs and nouns.

E.g. Adverbial:—Ils applaudirent à crever leurs gants.—Il bâille à se décrocher la mâchoire.—Laide à faire peur.

Adjectival:—Un conte à faire dresser les cheveux sur la tête.—Un vent à écorner un bœuf.—Un conte à dormir debout.

Obs. i. *Forcer*, *obliger*: *à* is used after the active, *de* after the passive of these verbs. Thus—Il nous force à répéter cela.—Je suis obligé de vous dire.

ii. *Demander à*, to ask leave to, the subjects of *demander* and of the infinitive being the same. *Demander de*, the subjects being different, to ask some one else to. Thus—*Je demande à sortir, I ask to go out.*—*Il me demande de lire ce roman, he asks me to read . . .*

217. *Jusqu'à*. *Il alla jusqu'à me donner un soufflet, he went so far as to give me . . .*

218. *Près de* = *almost, nearly*. *Il était près de pleurer de rage.*

219. *Par*, only after verbs of *beginning* and *ending*.

E.g. Il commença par l'injurier, he began by insulting him.
—*Il finit par l'écraser.*

Caution—do not use *par* + inf. (= “by -ing”) after other verbs than these: *en* with gerund will generally suit.

* * *Avant de, Afin de, Après, Pour, Sans*, are followed by the Infinitive if the subject of the Infinitive is the same as that of the Principal Verb. If the subjects differ, *avant que, afin que, pour que, sans que* with the subjunctive, and *après que* with the Indicative must be used. (This latter construction is shown by the sentences in parentheses.)

220. *Avant de, before.*

E.g. Il acheva de l'écrire avant de partir, he finished writing it before leaving. (*Il sortit avant que la neige eût cessé de tomber, he went out before the snow ceased falling.*)

221. *Afin de, in order to, like pour* (§ 222).

222. *Pour, for, in order to*. 1. With present infinitive, denotes a *purpose* (also, *afin de*) or grants a *concession*.

E.g. J'ai ralenti le pas pour ne pas le dépasser. (*Je suis venu pour que nous arrangions l'affaire*)—*Pour être prisonnier il n'agissait pas moins, although a prisoner, he was no less active.*

2. With perfect infinitive, states a *cause*.

E.g. Il est puni pour avoir cassé l'assiette, for having broken, because he broke.

Obs. After *trop* and *assez*, *pour* translates the English “to.” *Il est trop faible pour travailler.*—*Elle n'est pas assez forte pour aller à l'école.*

223. *Sans, without.*

E.g. Notre hôte est parti sans dire adieu, without saying good-bye. (*Il part sans que je le sache, without my knowing.*)

224. *Après, after*, requires the perfect infinitive.

E.g. Il mourut tout de suite après l'avoir bu, *he died immediately after drinking it.* (Je l'ai trouvé après que mon ami s'en est allé.)

225. Miscellaneous examples of the English Infinitive and Participle.

| | |
|---|--|
| It's the only thing <i>for you to do</i> , | c'est la seule chose que vous puissiez faire. |
| He means you <i>to obey</i> , | il entend que vous lui obéissiez. |
| <i>For it to be</i> a success . . . | pour que ce soit un succès. |
| I wish <i>to leave</i> at 8 p.m., | je veux partir à 8 h. du soir. |
| I wish <i>him to leave</i> at 8, | je veux qu'il parte à 8 h. |
| He gave it to the prince <i>for him to keep</i> . | il le donna au prince pour qu'il le gardât. |
| I never expected <i>to see you</i> , | je ne m'attendais pas à vous voir. |
| I never expected <i>his coming</i> , | je ne m'attendais aucunement à ce qu'il vînt. |
| Without <i>seeing me</i> , | sans me voir. |
| Without <i>my seeing him</i> , | sans que je le voie. |
| He consented to <i>his son's becoming</i> a doctor, | il consentit à ce que son fils devînt médecin. |
| I insist on <i>his coming</i> , | je veux absolument qu'il vienne. |
| He stood <i>staring</i> at me, | il resta là à me regarder. |
| Are you hurt at <i>my not calling</i> ? | êtes-vous blessé de ce que je ne vous aie pas fait visite? |
| The garden wants <i>watering</i> , | { il faut arroser le jardin. |
| He was sure of <i>overtaking</i> him, | { le jardin a besoin d'être arrosé. |
| <i>Smoking</i> forbidden, | il était sûr de le dépasser. |
| There is nothing like <i>having</i> plenty, | défense de fumer. |
| | il n'y a rien de tel que d'en avoir beaucoup. |

* * In § 338 will be found an alphabetical list of verbs arranged with sentences to show their construction.

XXIV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE

226. The Indicative deals with facts: the Subjunctive with conceptions of the mind. The Subjunctive in English has almost entirely dropped out of use. A knowledge of the use of the mood in Latin will often help, but do not suppose that the French and Latin uses are in all cases identical. The indirect question; *que* introducing a direct statement or expressing a consequence; hypothetical (with *si*), causal and temporal sentences; require the indicative (see exceptions noted below). At the same time certain conjunctions take the subjunctive when a mere fact is stated,

The main uses of the Subjunctive are :

227. 1. In Relative Sentences introduced by *qui, où*, etc.:

a. Final, expressing a purpose.

E.g. Il résolut de faire bâtir une grande maison qui servît d'hôpital.

b. Consecutive, *qui* = "such as" (*talis ut*). The final and consecutive meanings often overlap.

E.g. Je cherche une maison qui me convienne.

Je voulais choisir une carrière qui ne coûtât rien à ma mère.

Especially common after a negative or interrogative :

Mon aveu n'a rien qui doive vous choquer.

Il n'est si bonne compagnie qui ne se sépare.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui m'attende?

c. When the antecedent is a *Superlative* (also, *le seul, l'unique, le premier*, etc.), and the word "ever" can be added.

C'est le meilleur roman que j'aie jamais lu (*which I have ever read*).

Il n'y a que vous (=vous êtes le seul) qui ayez pu faire cela.

d. Concessive.

Qui que vous soyez, *whoever you are*.—Quoi que je fasse, *whatever I do*.—Quoi qu'il en soit, *however that may be*.—Où que vous soyez.—Quelques habitudes que vous ayez. See § 140.

228. 2. After negative, interrogative, and hypothetical verbs of saying and thinking.

Je ne crois pas qu'elle soit arrivée.

Croyez-vous que mes paroles soient inspirées par la jalousie?

Admettons que vous soyez dans vos droits.

(Contrast the Indicative—Il ne croit pas que je suis son ami, = *I am his friend but he does not believe it*.)

229. 3. After Verbs and Adjectives expressing Emotion, such as—Joy, Doubt, Sorrow, Fear, Surprise, etc., as well as Wish, Command, Permission.

Voulez-vous que je vous dise la vérité?

Il ordonna qu'on attelât les chevaux. Dites-lui qu'il vienne.

Les rois n'aiment pas qu'on les voie pleurer.
 Je doute qu'il soit assez adroit (*I doubt whether*).
 Je crains qu'il ne coure trop lentement (see § 274).
 Nous sommes étonnés que vous ne puissiez en trouver un.
 Quel dommage que vous ne vous soyez pas appliqué.

With *Que* alone, the subjunctive expresses a *wish* (optative), *command*, *concession*, *exclamation*.

Qu'il parte ! Que Dieu veuille sur nous !

(*Que*, optative, is sometimes omitted. Dieu protège la France ! Vive le roi !)

230. 4. After certain Impersonals.

Il faut que tout le monde vive.
 Il est bon qu'un marchand sache parler l'espagnol.
 Il est important que vous partiez tout de suite.
 Comment se fait-il que vous m'ayez laissé sans nouvelles ?

So also—il est naturel, il importe, il se peut, il est possible, il est nécessaire, il vaut mieux, il est juste, il semble.

On the other hand—il me (lui, etc.) semble, il paraît, il est probable, take the Indicative.

231. 5. The following **Conjunctions** are always used with the Subjunctive :

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Avant que, <i>before</i> . | Quoique, } | <i>although</i> . |
| Afin que, } | Bien que, } | |
| Pour que, } | | <i>in order that</i> . |
| Sans que, <i>without</i> . | Pourvu que, <i>provided that</i> . | |
| De crainte que, } | A moins que . . . ne, <i>unless</i> . | |
| De peur que, } | Loin que, <i>far from</i> . | |
| | Non que, <i>not that</i> . | |
| En attendant que, <i>until</i> . | | |

Avant que les deux fussent arrivés à mi-chemin.

Jean passa sans que Marie levât les yeux.

A moins qu'il ne le fasse tout de suite.

Quoique je rie, je souffre.

Obs. i. Jusqu'à ce que, *until*, and de sorte que, de manière que, de façon que, *so that*, take the subjunctive only when a notion of *purpose* is meant to be conveyed ; the indicative, when a *fact* is stated.

Restez ici jusqu'à ce que vous vous soyez assez reposé (*purpose*).

Il suivit la route jusqu'à ce qu'il arriva à la caserne = *and ultimately arrived*.

Il voulait avertir les sergents de façon qu'ils arrivassent au même moment (*purpose*).

Il avait beaucoup plu, de sorte que la rivière débordait (*fact*).

ii. **Si** takes the indicative (see § 331), but all other conjunctions meaning “if,” *supposé que*, *en cas que*, etc., take the subjunctive. *Si* must never be used with the present subjunctive, though it is frequently used with the imperfect.

232. The Imperfect Subjunctive is frequently used for the conditional.

On eût dit que Jean n’y avait jamais été auparavant.
Il l’eût certainement fait, s’il eût vécu.

233. Sequence of Tenses.

As in Latin, the primary tenses of the indicative in the principal clause are followed by the primary tenses of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and the historic by the historic. The Conditional is regarded as historic.

Je crains qu’il ne meure. Il faudrait qu’il retournât.

[It is now permissible to employ the pres. subj. after the conditional.]

234. Subjunctive Avoided.—The Subjunctive is less frequently used by modern writers than by those of earlier date. It is especially desirable to avoid the imperfect tense—in conversational sentences at any rate:—such harsh forms as *envoyassiez*, *connuissions*. When possible, use the Infinitive construction, e.g. instead of *avant que*, *afin que*, *pour que*, *de manière que*, *sans que*, *de peur que*, *à moins que* with Subjunctive, use *avant de*, *de manière à*, *de peur de*, etc., with Infinitive, in cases where the subject of the dependent clause is the same as that of the principal clause. See §§ 220-224. A little ingenuity, such as is suggested in the following sentences, will result in turning a hard sounding subjunctive sentence :

Il ordonna qu’ils sortissent—il leur ordonna de sortir.

Ils s’étaient liés avec des cordes de peur qu’ils ne tombassent—de peur de tomber.

Avant qu’ils retournassent—avant leur retour.

Je voudrais que vous chantassiez—voulez-vous bien chanter?

Ils ne tinrent pas à ce que vous fussiez instruits—ils ne tinrent pas à vous voir instruits.

Je voudrais que vous fussiez riche—Je voudrais vous savoir (voir) riche. *Or*, je vous souhaite la richesse.

Il était fâché que vous fussiez partis—il était fâché de vous trouver partis.

Il ordonna qu’on amenât le paysan—il fit venir le paysan.

La voile fut attachée de manière qu’on pût la déployer en un instant—de manière à pouvoir être déployée.

XXV. IRREGULAR VERBS

235. FIRST LIST.

N.B.—Compound Verbs are not given : they are usually conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed.

| Infinitive. | Participles. | Present Indicative. | Imperfect. Past Definite. | Future. Conditional. | Impera- tive. | Subjunctive. Pres., Impl. |
|--|-----------------------|---|------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Aller <i>go</i> (aux. être) | allant allé | vais, vas, va allons, -ez, vont | allais allai | irai irais | va [vas-y] | aïlle ¹ allasse |
| 2 Battre <i>beat</i> | battant battu | bats, -s, bat battions, -ez, -ent | batais battis | battrai battrais | bats | batte battisse |
| 3 Boire <i>drink</i> | buvant bu | bois, -s, -t buvons, -ez, boivent | buvais bus | boirai boirais | bois | boive ¹ busse |
| 4 Conduire ² <i>conduct</i> | conduisant conduit | conduis, -s, -t conduisons, -ez, -ent | conduisais conduisis | conduirai conduirais | conduis | conduise conduisise |
| 5 Connaître ³ <i>know</i> | connaissant connu | connais, -s, -ait connaissons, -ez, -ent | connaissais connus | connaîtrai connaîtrais | connais | connaisse connusse |
| 6 Courir <i>run</i> | courant couru | cours, -s, -t courons, -ez, -ent | courais courus | courrai courrais | cours | coure coursusse |
| 7 Couvrir ⁴ <i>cover</i> | couvrant couvert | couvre, -es, -e couvrons, -ez, -ent | couvrais couvris | couvrirai couvrirais | couvre | couvre couvrisse |
| 8 Craindre ⁵ <i>fear</i> | crainnant craint | crains, -s, -t craignons, -ez, -ent | craignais craignis | craindrai craindrais | crains | craigne craignisse |

| | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------|--|---------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| 9 Croire <i>believe</i> | croyant cru | crois, -s, -t croyons, -ez, croient | croyais cru | croirai croirais | crois | croire cru |
| 10 Devoir <i>owe</i> | devant dû, <i>f.</i> due | dois, -s, -t devons, -ez, doivent | devais dus | devrai devrais | [dois] | doive ¹ dusse |
| 11 Dire ⁶ <i>say</i> | disant dit | dis, -s, -t disons, dites, disent | disais dis | dirai dirais | dis | dise disse |
| 12 Dormir ⁷ <i>sleep</i> | dormant dormi | dors, -s, -t dormons, -ez, -ent | dormais dormis | dormirai dormirais | dors | dorme dormisse |
| 13 Écrire <i>write</i> | écrivant écrit | écris, -s, -t écrivons, -ez, -ent | écrivais écrivis | écrirai écrirais | écris | écrive écrivisse |
| 14 Envoyer <i>send</i> | envoyant envoyé | envoie, -es, -e envoyons, -ez, envoient | envoyais envoyai | enverrai enverrais | envoie | envoie envoyasse |
| 15 Faire <i>do, make</i> | faisant ⁸ fait | fais, -s, -t faisons, faites, font | faisais fis | ferai ferais | fais | fasse fisse |
| 16 Lire <i>read</i> | lisant lu | lis, -s, -t lisons, -ez, -ent | lisais lus | lirai lirais | lis | lise lusse |
| 17 Mettre <i>put</i> | mettant mis | metts, -s, met mettons, -ez, -ent | mettais mis | mettrai mettrais | metts | mette misse |
| 18 Mourir ⁹ <i>die</i> (aux. être) | mourant mort | meurs, -s, -t mourons, -ez, meurent | mourais mourus | mourrai mourrais | meurs | meure ¹ mourusse |
| 19 Naître <i>be born</i> (aux. être) | naissant né | nais, -s, naît naissions, -ez, -ent | naissais naquis | naîtrai naîtrais | nais | naisse naquisse |

| Infinitive. | Participles. | Present Indicative. | Imperfect. Past Definite. | Future. Conditional. | Impera- tive. | Subjunctive. Pres., Impf. |
|--|-----------------------------|--|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|
| 20 Plaire <i>please</i> | plaisant plu | plais, -s, plaît plaisons, -ez, -ent | plaisais plus | plaira plairais | plais | plaise pluse |
| 21 Pleuvor <i>rain</i> | pleuvant plu | il pleut (<i>impersonal</i>) | pleuvait plut | pleuvra pleuvrait | — | pleuve plût |
| 22 Pouvoir ⁹ <i>can</i> | pouvant pu | peux (puis), -x, -t pouvons, -ez, peuvent | pouvais pus | pourrai pourrais | — | puisse pusse |
| 23 Prendre <i>take</i> | prenant pris | prends, -s, prend prenons, -ez, prennent | prenais pris | prendrai prendrais | prends | prenne ¹ prisse |
| 24 Recevoir ¹⁰ <i>receive</i> | recevant reçu | reçois, -s, -t recevons, -ez, reçoivent | recevais reçus | recevrai recevrais | reçois | reçoive ¹ reçusse |
| 25 Rire <i>laugh</i> | riant ri | ris, -s, -t rions, -ez, -ent | riaais ris | rirai rirais | ris | rie risse |
| 26 Rompre <i>break</i> | rompant rompu | romps, -s, rompt rompons, -ez, -ent | rompais rompis | romprai romprais | romps | rompe rompisse |
| 27 Savoir <i>know</i> | sachant ¹¹ su | sais, -s, -t savons, -ez, savent | savais sus | saurai saurais | sache | sache susse |
| 28 Suivre <i>follow</i> | suivant suivi | suis, -s, -t suivons, -ez, -ent | suivais suivis | suivrai suivrais | suis | suive suivisse |
| 29 Tenir <i>hold</i> | tenant tenu | tiens, -s, -t tenons, -ez, tiennent | tenais tins ¹² | tiendrai tiendrais | tiens | tienne ¹ tinsse |

| | | | | | |
|--|------------------|--|------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| 30 Venir <i>come</i> (aux. être) | venant venu | viens, -s, -t venons, -ez, viennent | venais vins ¹² | viendrai viendrais | viens vienne ¹ vinsse |
| 31 Vivre <i>live</i> | vivant vécu | vis, -s, -t vivons, -ez, -ent | vivais vécus | vivrai vivrais | vive vécusse |
| 32 Voir <i>see</i> | voyant vu | vois, -s, -t voyons, -ez, voient | voyais vis | verrai verrais | voie visse |
| 33 Vouloir ⁹ <i>wish</i> | voulant voulu | veux, -x, -t voulons, -ez, veulent | voulais voulus | voudrai voudrais | veuille ¹³ veuillez voulusse |

SECOND LIST.

| | | | | | |
|---|--|---|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 34 Absoudre <i>absolve</i> | absolvant absous <i>f. absoute</i> | absous, -s, -t absolvons, -ez, -ent | absolvais — ¹⁴ | absoudrai absoudrais | absolve — |
| 35 Acquérir <i>acquire</i> | acquérant acquis | acquièrent, -s, -t acquérons, -ez, -ièrent | acquérerais acquis | acquerrai acquerrais | acquière acquisse |
| 36 Assaillir ¹⁵ <i>assail</i> | assaillant assailli | assaillent, -es, -e assaillons, -ez, -ent | assaillais assaillis | assaillirai assaillirais | assaille assaillisse |
| 37 s'Asseoir ¹⁶ <i>sit</i> (aux. être) | s'asseyant assis | m'assieds, -s, assied asseyons, -ez, -ent | m'asseyais m'assis | m'assiérai m'assiérais | m'asseye m'assisse |
| 38 Bouillir ¹⁷ <i>boil</i> | bouillant bouilli | bouill, -s, -t bouillons, -ez, -ent | bouillais bouillis | bouillirai bouillirais | bouille bouillisse |

For notes, see pages 106, 107.

| Infinitive | Participles. | Present Indicative. | Imperfect. Past Definite. | Future. Conditional. | Impera- tive. | Subjunctive. Pres., Impf. |
|---|----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| 39 Conclure <i>conclude</i> | concluant conclu | conclus, -s, -t concluons, -ez, -ent | concluais conclus | conclurai conclurais | conclus | conclue conclusse |
| 40 Confire <i>pickle</i> | confisant confit | confis, -s, -t confisons, -ez, -ent | confisais confis | confirai confirais | confis | confise confisse |
| 41 Coudre <i>sew</i> | cousant cousu | couds, -s, coud cousons, -ez, -ent | cousais cousis | coudrai coudrais | couds | couse cousisse |
| 42 Croître ¹⁸ <i>grow</i> | croissant crû, <i>f.</i> crue | croît, croîs, croît croissons, -ez, -ent | croissais crûs | croîtrai croîtrais | croîs | croisse crûsse |
| 43 Cueillir <i>pluck</i> | cueillant cueilli | cueille, -es, -e cueillons, -ez, -ent | cueillais cueillis | cueillerai cueillerai | cueille | cueille cueillisse |
| 44 Faillir <i>fail</i> | faillant failli | (faux, -x, -t) faillons, -ez, -ent | faillais faillis | faudrai faudrais | — | faile faillisse |
| 45 Falloir <i>must</i> | — fallu | il faut (<i>impersonal</i>) | fallait fallut | faudra faudrait | — | faile fallût |
| 46 Fuir <i>flee</i> | fuyant fui | fuis, -s, -t fuyons, -ez, fuient | fuyais fuis | fuirai fuirais | fuis | fuie fuisse |
| 47 Haïr <i>hate</i> | haïssant haï | haïs, -s, -t haïssons, -ez, -ent | haïssais haïs ¹⁹ | haïrai haïrais | haïs | haïsse haïsse |
| 48 Luire <i>shine</i> | luisant lui | luis, -s, -t luisons, -ez, -ent | luisais — | luirai luirais | luis | luise — |

| | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|
| 49 <i>maudire</i> <i>curse</i> | maudissant maudit | maudis, -s, -t maudissons, -ez, -ent | maudissais maudis | maudirai maudirais | maudis | maudisse maudisse |
| 50 <i>Moudre</i> <i>grind</i> | moulant moulu | mouds, -s, moud moulons, -ez, -ent | moulais moulus | moudrai moudrais | mouds | moule moulesse |
| 51 <i>Mouvoir</i> ⁹ <i>move</i> | mouvant mû, <i>f.</i> mue | meus, -s, -t mouvons, -ez, meuvent | mouvais mus | mouvrai mouvrais | meus | meuve musse |
| 52 <i>Nuire</i> <i>hurt</i> | nuisant nui | nuis, -s, -t nuisons, -ez, -ent | nuisais nuisis | nuirai nuirais | nuis | nuise nuisse |
| 53 <i>Pourvoir</i> <i>provide</i> | pourvoyant pourvu | pourvois, -s, -t pourvoyons, -ez, -oient | pourvoyais pourvus | pourvoirai pourvoirais | pourvois | pourvoie pourvusse |
| 54 <i>Prévoir</i> <i>foresee</i> | prévoyant prévu | prévois, -s, -t prévoyons, -ez, -oient | prévoyais prévis | prévoirai prévoirais | prévois | prévoie prévisse |
| 55 <i>Suffire</i> <i>suffice</i> | suffisant suffi | suffis, -s, -t suffisons, -ez, -ent | suffisais suffis | suffirai suffirais | suffis | suffise suffisse |
| 56 <i>Taire</i> ²⁰ <i>keep silent</i> | taisant tu | tais, -s, tait taisons, -ez, -ent | taisais tus | tairai tairais | tais | taise tusse |
| 57 <i>Traire</i> <i>milk</i> | trayant trait | trais, -s, -t trayons, -ez, traient | trayais — | trairai trairais | trais | traie — |
| 58 <i>Vaincre</i> <i>conquer</i> | vainquant vaincu | vaincs, -s, vainc vainquons, -ez, -ent | vainquais vainquis | vaincrai vaincrais | vaincs | vainque vainquisse |
| 59 <i>Valoir</i> ²¹ <i>be worth</i> | valant valu | vaux, -x, -t valons, -ez, -ent | valais valus | vaudrai vaudrais | vaux | vaille ¹ valusse |
| 60 <i>Vêtir</i> <i>clothe</i> | vêtant vêtu | vêts, -s, vêt vêtons, -ez, -ent | vêtais vêtis | vêtirai vêtirais | vêts | vête vêtisse |

S'en Aller, *go away, be off*, is conjugated like *aller*:—*s'en allant*, *en allé*, *je m'en vais*, *je m'en irai*, *va-t'en*, *je m'en suis allé*, etc.

Bénir, *bless.* The regular past participle is *béni*. Another form *bénit*, *consecrated*, is used as an adjective:—*pain bénit*, *eau bénite*.

Clore, *close*: *past part.*, *clos*; *sing. of pres. indic.*, *clos*, *clos*, *clôt*; *fut.*, *cond.*, *clorai*, *clorais*, etc.; *pres. subj.*, *close*, etc.

Fleurir, *blossom*, in its literal meaning conjugates regularly like *finir*: used metaphorically, *flourish*, it has *pres. part.*, *florissant*; *impf.*, *florissais*.

Frire, *fry*: *past part.*, *frit*; *pres. indic.*, *fris* (*singular only*); *fut.*, *cond.*, *frirai*, *frirais*.

Gésir, *lie*: *pres. part.*, *gisant*; *pres. ind.*, *gît*, *gisons*, *gisez*, *gisent* (as used in epitaphs: *ci-gît*, *ci-gisent*, *here lies*, *here lie*); *impf.*, *gisais*.

Seoir, *suit*, *become*: *pres. ind.*, *il sied*; *impf.*, *il seyait*; *fut.*, *il siéra*.

Oûir, *hear*, only used in the past participle; e.g. *j'ai ouï dire*, *I have heard say*.

NOTES

¹ Present Subjunctive:

aille, -es, -e, *allions*, -iez, *aillent*.
boive, -es, -e, *buvions*, -iez, *boivent*.
doive, -es, -e, *devions*, -iez, *doivent*.
meure, -es, -e, *mourions*, -iez, *meurent*.
prenne, -es, -e, *prenions*, -iez, *prennent*.
reçoive, -es, -e, *recevions*, -iez, *reçoivent*.
tienne, -es, -e, *tenions*, -iez, *tiennent*.
*vienn*e, -es, -e, *venions*, -iez, *viennent*.
veuille, -es, -e, *voulions*, -iez, *veuillent*.
vaille, -es, -e, *valions*, -iez, *vailent*.

² So—*cuire*, *cook*; *instruire*, *instruct*; *produire*, *produce*; *construire*, *construct*; *détruire*, *destroy*; *traduire*, *translate*; *introduire*, *introduce*; *réduire*, *reduce*.

³ So—*paraître*, *appear*, and compounds. Verbs ending in *-aître* take a circumflex accent over *i* when followed by a *t*.

⁴ So—*offrir*, *offer*; *ouvrir*, *open*; *souffrir*, *suffer*.

⁵ So—all verbs in *-aindre*, *-eindre*, *-oindre*: *plaindre*, *pity*; *peindre*, *paint*; *joindre*, *join*; *éteindre*, *extinguish*, etc.

⁶ Compounds of *dire* make *-disez* in 2nd plur. *pres. ind.*—*médisez*, *prédisez*, etc. *Redire* has *redites*. See *maudire*.

⁷ For *dormir* and similar verbs, see § 178.

⁸ *Faisant*, *faisons*, *faisais*, etc., pronounced *fésant*, *fésans*, *fésais*.

Mourir, *pouvoir*, *mouvoir*, *vouloir* change the diphthong *ou* into *eu*

- in monosyllabic forms, or when the final syllable is mute, *e.g.* mourons, *but* meure; pouvez, *but* peuvent; meurs, veux, etc.
- ¹⁰ So—concevoir, *conceive*; apercevoir, *perceive*; décevoir, *deceive*. The few verbs in *-cevoir* form, in some grammars, a separate (third) conjugation, those in *-re* being the fourth.
- ¹¹ Savant is a noun, *scholar*, or an adjective, *clever*.
- ¹² Nous tîmes, vous tîntes, ils tinrent.
Nous vîmes, vous vîntes, ils vinrent.
- ¹³ Also veux, voulons, voulez, when meaning *will, wish*. Veuillez, veuillez are used in polite requests—*be good enough to*.
- ¹⁴ Résoudre has *pret. résolu*; *impf. subj. résolusse*.
- ¹⁵ So—tressaillir, *start with fear*.
- ¹⁶ The following forms of certain parts of the verb are sometimes met with:—assoyant, assois, -s, -t, -oyons, -oyez, -oient, assoyais, assoirai, assoirais, assois, assoie.
- ¹⁷ Bouillir is intransitive. Faire bouillir is transitive.
- ¹⁸ Parts of croire which resemble croire are distinguished by a circumflex accent.
- ¹⁹ Plural, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent.
- ²⁰ As a reflexive verb, se taire—to be silent.
- ²¹ Prévaloir, *pres. subj. prévale*.

XXVI. ADVERBS

236. Adverbs qualify adjectives, verbs, or other adverbs, and express—Manner, Degree, Time, Place, Quantity, Affirmation, Negation, Doubt.

Most Adjectives are capable of forming Adverbs of Manner (§ 237), but French generally avoids long, cumbersome adverbial forms (§ 241). Adverbs are either single words as *bien, tôt, très*, or compounds, like *désormais, auparavant*: while there are a great number of adverbial phrases in French, such as *tout à l'heure* (*presently*), *à coup sûr* (*surely*), *sur-le-champ* (*at once*), etc., etc.

237. ADVERBS OF MANNER are formed from Adjectives by adding **-ment** to the feminine:—discret, *f.* discrète, discrètement; heureux, *f.* heureuse, heureusement.

But—1. If the adjective ends with a vowel, **-ment** is added to the masculine:—poli, poliment; décidé, décidément.

2. If the adjective ends in **-ant, -ent**, these terminations are changed to **-amment, -emment**:—constant, constamment; prudent, prudemment. *Exc.*: lent (*slow*), lentement; présent, présentement; véhément, véhémentement.

3. The following (besides other) adjectives form no corresponding adverbs : content, crédule, hautain.

238. Exceptional Forms.

1. The following take a circumflex accent on the *u* :

nu, nûment ; assidu, assidûment ; congru, congrûment ;
cru, crûment ; continu, continûment ; dû, dûment.

2. Some adverbs take an *é* before the *-ment* :

aveugle, *blind*, aveuglément.¹ opiniâtre, *obstinate*, opiniâtrement.
profond, *deep*, profondément. obscur, *dark*, obscurément.
exprès, *express*, expressément. précis, *exact*, précisément.

| | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| immensément. | confusément. | commodément. |
| énormément. | profusément. | conformément. |

| | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 3. Bref, brièvement. | gentil, gentiment. | gai, gaîment. } |
| impuni, impunément. | traître, traîtreusement. | gaiement. } |

| | | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 4. Bon, bien. | petit, peu. | mauvais, mal. |
| meilleur, mieux. | moindre, moins. | pire, pis. |

Carefully distinguish between adjectives and adverbs :

On va mieux par ici, c'est le meilleur chemin.

Le petit Thomas boit un peu d'eau.

Le mauvais garçon a mal appris sa leçon.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| 5. Notamment, <i>especially</i> } | are formed from obsolete French words | { notant. scient. nuitant. |
| Sciemment, <i>knowingly</i> } | | |
| Nuitamment, <i>by night</i> } | | |

239. Some examples and idiomatic uses of *Bien*, *Mieux*, etc.

Il va très bien, *he is very well*.

Je me sens mieux, *I feel better*.

Faute de mieux, *for want of some-
thing better*.

Vous feriez mieux de ne plus en
parler, *you had better say no
more about it*.

J'ai fait de mon mieux pour le
trouver, *I have done my best to
find it*.

Il ne demande pas mieux, *he wants
nothing better*.

Il vaudrait mieux se taire, *it would
be better to keep silent*.

Tant mieux, tant pis, *so much the
better, the worse*.

A qui mieux mieux, *in rivalry*.

Tout bonnement, *simply*.

Au pis aller, *if the worst comes to
the worst*.

Qui pis est, *and what is worse*.

Cela va de mal en pis, *things are
going from bad to worse*.

En moins de rien, *in less than no
time*.

Il fait beaucoup de cas de cela, *he
attaches much importance to
that*.

Moi, j'en fais peu de cas, *I think
little of it*.

Un peu moins qu'un cheval, et un
peu plus qu'un chien.

¹ Aveuglement, *blindness*.

240. A few **Adjectives** are used **Adverbially** with certain verbs (cp. Eng. *hold tight, talk loud, run quick*, etc.).

Crier **haut**, *shout loud*.

Parler **bas**, *talk low*.

Jeter **bas**, *throw down*.

Sentir **bon**, *smell nice*.

Sentir **mauvais**, *smell bad*.

Tenir **bon**, *hold fast*.

Deviner **juste**, *guess right*.

Chanter **juste**, *sing in tune*.

Chanter **faux**, *out of tune*.

Marcher **droit**, *walk straight*.

Voir **clair**, *see distinctly*.

Couper **ras**, *cut close*.

Faire **exprès**, *do on purpose*.

Coûter **cher**, *cost dear*.

Couper **court**, *cut short*.

Refuser **net**, *refuse point blank*.

Tenir **ferme**, *hold fast*.

Il en sait **long**, *he knows all about it*. La neige tombe **dru**, *the snow falls thick*. Raide mort, *stone dead*. A **vrai dire**, *to tell the truth*.

Vite, *quickly*, Soudain, *suddenly*, have replaced *vitement, soudainement*.

241. Adverbial Phrases of Manner. Clumsy French adverbs and long English ones are rendered more elegantly by:

1. The use of *avec, sans, par*, with the noun—e.g. *unhesitatingly, sans hésitation; desperately, avec acharnement; accidentally, par accident*.

2. The use of *air, voix, ton, manière, façon*, with *de*—e.g. *emphatically, d'un ton emphatique; conciliatorily, d'une voix conciliante; gravely and coldly, d'un air grave et froid; unsatisfactorily, d'une manière peu satisfaisante; threateningly, d'une voix menaçante; ill-humouredly, d'un air de mauvaise humeur*.

Obs.—An adverbial *absolute construction* is very common in French and should be imitated—e.g. *il demeura immobile l'épée à la main, sword in hand; les yeux fermés, with closed eyes*.

3. Many English adverbs can often be neatly turned by certain French verbs:

He all but fell, il faillit tomber.

He will shortly overtake him, il ne tardera pas à le dépasser.

He did not decide in a hurry, il n'avait pas hâte de se décider.

He eventually drove him out, il a fini par le chasser.

He eagerly got up, il s'empressa de se lever.

He simply looked, il se contenta de regarder.

4. *À la* + feminine adjective (*mode* understood) or noun:—e.g. *à la française (French fashion), à la légère (lightly), à la hâte (hastily), à la dérobée (stealthily), à la rigueur (strictly speaking), à l'unanimité (unanimously), à l'étourdie (stupidly), à l'improviste (unexpectedly)*.

242. Comparison of Adverbs. Adverbs compare in the same way as Adjectives. *E.g. Facilement, plus (moins) facilement, le plus (le moins) facilement*.

A few adverbs of Time and Place also compare: *e.g. de bonne heure*,

110 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

comp. de meilleure heure. Loin, longtemps, tôt, tard, *comp.* plus loin, etc.

243. FURTHER ADVERBS OF MANNER AND DEGREE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ainsi, <i>so</i> | Comme, <i>how</i> | Ensemble, <i>together</i> |
| Aussi, <i>as, and so</i> | Comment, <i>how?</i> | Peu à peu, <i>gradually</i> |
| Bien, <i>very</i> | Combien, <i>how much?</i> | Surtout, <i>especially</i> |
| Fort, <i>very</i> | Beaucoup, <i>much</i> | D'ailleurs, <i>besides</i> |
| Même, <i>even</i> | Plus, <i>more</i> | Environ, <i>about</i> |
| Tellement, <i>so</i> | Moins, <i>less</i> | Plutôt, <i>rather</i> |
| Si, <i>so</i> | Très, <i>very</i> | Pourquoi, <i>why?</i> |
| Un peu, <i>somewhat</i> | Tout, <i>quite</i> | Que ne, <i>why not?</i> |
| Quelque, <i>about</i> | De même, <i>likewise</i> | |

Many of these are also Adverbs of Quantity. § 251.

244. Bien. 1. = *very*. *E.g.* Bien fatigué.—C'est bien bon, bien mauvais.

2. Emphasises a verb, etc. *E.g.* C'est bien le quinze, n'est-ce pas? *it is the 15th, isn't it?*—Il y en a bien douze, *there are a good twelve*.

3. *Le bien* is a noun. Le mieux est souvent l'ennemi du bien (*leave well alone*). Le bien, les biens also = *property, possessions*.

245. Peu, Un peu.—*Peu* negatives, while *un peu* modifies adjectives and adverbs. *E.g.* Peu commun, *uncommon*; peu favorablement, *unfavourably*; un peu exigeant, *rather exacting*; peu profond, *shallow*.

Le peu is a noun. Le peu de cas qu'il en fait, *the little importance he attaches to it*.

246. Comme. 1. "How," in exclamations. Comme il fait beau!

2. "As." Il était pauvre comme un rat d'église, *as poor as a church mouse*.

3. "As if," "as it were," before a noun, adjective, participle, or phrase.—Il éprouva comme un fatal pressentiment.—Ils s'embrassèrent comme pour un dernier adieu. (Before a verb, "as if" is *comme si*. Faites comme si vous étiez chez vous.)

4. A conjunction, *as*.—Comme vous êtes arrivé, nous pouvons commencer, *as you have come, we may begin*.

247. Même. The adjective *même* has been noticed, § 138. Note the following uses and idioms of the adverb;—

Leurs vertus et même leurs noms, *their virtues and even their names.*

Faites de même, *do likewise.*

Buvez à même la bouteille, *drink out of the bottle.*

C'est dommage, tout de même, *it is a pity all the same.*

Quand même vous me haïriez je reste votre ami, *though you hate me I remain your friend* (§ 199).

Elle est la bonté, la douceur même, *kindness and sweetness itself.*

Nous sommes à même de lui rendre de grands services, *we are able to, in a position to do him great services.*

Je l'ai mis à même de faire cela, *I have enabled him to do that.*

248. So. i. Before adjectives and adverbs, *so* is *si, tellement, tant.* *E.g.* Nous sommes si (tellement) fatigués que nous ne pouvons plus marcher.—Il ne peut plus marcher, tant il est fatigué.

2. With Verbs, *so* is *ainsi.* *E.g.* Ainsi soit-il, *so be it!*

3. In the sense of *therefore*, standing at the beginning of a sentence, it is *aussi*, and the sentence takes the inverted (interrogative) order *E.g.* Aussi le matelot est-il parti, *so the sailor departed.*

249. As is rendered as follows :

I am as tall as you, *je suis aussi grand que vous.*

As long as you like, *tant que vous voudrez.*

As for you, *quant à vous.* As well as you, *aussi bien que vous.*

This man served us as guide, *cet homme nous servit de guide.*

They take as it were a malicious pleasure, *ils prennent comme un malin plaisir.*

As we advanced he retired, *à mesure que nous (nous) avançons, il se retira.*

250. How. i. **Comment** introduces questions: *how? in what manner?* ii. **Comme** and **Que** introduce exclamations.
iii. **Combien, A quel point**, *how? to what extent?*

How unhappy I am! *que je suis malheureux!*

How fine it is! *comme il fait beau!*

How are you? *comment allez-vous?*

How far is it to Dover? *combien y a-t-il d'ici à Douvres?*

How long was he in France? *combien de temps a-t-il été en France?*

How often have you been in Paris? *combien de fois avez-vous été à Paris?*

Do you know how he admires you? *savez-vous combien (à quel point) il vous admire?*

How far did he follow them? *jusqu'où les a-t-il suivis?*

251. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY, with *de*, translate the English adjectives of quantity:—*e.g.* beaucoup de vin; moins d'honneur. See § 17.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Assez, <i>enough</i> | Moins, <i>less, fewer</i> |
| Autant, } <i>as much</i> | Peu, <i>little, few</i> |
| Tant, } <i>as many, so much</i> | Un peu, <i>a few, a little</i> |
| Beaucoup, } <i>much</i> | Trop, <i>too much, many</i> |
| Bien, } <i>many</i> | Que! <i>how many! what a lot of!</i> |
| Combien, <i>how much, many</i> | Encore, <i>some more</i> |
| Davantage, } <i>more</i> | La plupart, <i>most</i> |
| Plus (§ 253), } | |

252. Much, Many, and the various English phrases expressing quantity, *e.g. a lot of, a great deal of, heaps of, etc.*, are rendered by **Beaucoup de**, but remember that *beaucoup* is never qualified by *très*.

Most is expressed by (1) **Le plus de** (indeclinable) with singular abstract nouns, *e.g. le plus d'honneur, le plus de crédit*; (2) **La plupart de**, with plural and collective nouns, *e.g. la plupart des gens* (we can also say, *e.g. la plus grande partie des habitants, most of the inhabitants*).

Note that *bien* is used with the partitive article, *i.e. de + def. article*. *E.g. Il a passé bien de l'eau sous le pont, much water.* (But, *bien d'autres, many others.*)

Notice also a few other phrases for *much, many*:—*Il se donne infiniment de peine.*—*Enormément de charbon.*—*Abondance de bon vin.*—*Force moutons.*—*Pas mal de, a fair amount of* (does not require *ne*): *Il y avait pas mal de monde, a good few people were there.*

253. Plus, Davantage, more. *Davantage* differs from *plus* in that it is not used before *que* or *de*, nor can it qualify an adjective. Before numerals *more than* is *plus de* (also *less than, moins de*).

Il y a ici plus de vingt personnes. Il en a plus que vous.

Pierre est diligent, mais Paul l'est davantage.

En moins de dix minutes. Il est plus d'à moitié mort.

Il a trente-cinq ans et davantage.

Une araignée peut manger plus de dix mouches, a spider can eat more than ten flies.

Quand j'ai faim, je peux manger plus que dix hommes, when I am hungry I can eat more than ten men (can).

254. Tant, Autant. 1. To express a comparison (*as much as, as many as*), use *Autant . . . que* in affirmative sentences, *Tant . . . que* in negative sentences. *E.g. Il lit autant que vous.*—*Rien ne pèse tant qu'un secret.*

2. When used as adverbs of quantity with *de*, the same distinction is observed. *E.g.* Je n'ai jamais vu tant d'oiseaux.—Crois-tu qu'il ait autant d'argent qu'il le dit ?

3. To express intensity or quantity, *so much, so many that* (consecutive), *Tant* is to be used. *E.g.* J'ai fait tant d'efforts qu'enfin j'ai réussi.—Il parla avec tant de bonté que les larmes m'en vinrent aux yeux.

4. *Tant* often like the English (*I am so sorry. He is such a reader*) means simply *very*. *E.g.* Il lit tant de livres.—Il a tant souffert.

The following idiomatic uses should be noticed :

C'est à peine s'il peut continuer, tant il est fatigué.—*He can hardly continue, so tired is he.*

Je l'ai arrangé tant bien que mal.—*I have settled it pretty well, after a fashion.*

Je suis tant soit peu surpris.—*I am somewhat surprised.*

Tant que je vivrai, je ne l'oublierai pas.—*As long as I live I shall not forget him.*

Je suis d'autant plus heureux que je vous vois en bonne santé.—*I am all the happier because I see you in good health.*

Il lui ordonna d'aller en faire autant.—*He commanded him to go and do likewise.*

Pourvu qu'il reçoive autant qu'il mérite.—*I hope he'll get as much as he deserves.*

255. ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES OF PLACE.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Ici, <i>here</i> | Dessous, | } <i>underneath</i> |
| Là, <i>there</i> | Là-dessous, | |
| Y, <i>there</i> , § 78 | Derrière, | } <i>behind</i> |
| Çà et là, <i>here and there</i> | En arrière, | |
| Là-bas, <i>over there</i> | Devant, | } <i>in front</i> |
| Loin, <i>far</i> | En avant, | |
| Où, <i>where</i> | Autre part, | } <i>elsewhere</i> |
| D'où, <i>whence</i> | Ailleurs, | |
| Partout, <i>everywhere</i> | En haut, <i>above, upstairs</i> | |
| Dedans, | En bas, <i>below, downstairs</i> | |
| Là-dedans, | Au delà, <i>beyond</i> | |
| Dehors, | Quelque part, <i>somewhere</i> | |
| En dehors, | Nulle part, <i>nowhere</i> | |
| Dessus, | De toutes parts, <i>on all sides</i> | |
| Là-dessus, | | |

256. Où. Is used of *place, time, and circumstance*. Où allez-vous? *where are you going?*—Partout où tu vas, *wherever you go*.—Le jour où il est venu, *the day he came*. (See § 114.)—Le terrible état où il était, *the dreadful state he was in (où = dans lequel)*.

257. Dessus, Dessous. Sens dessus dessous, *topsy-turvy*.—Bras dessus, bras dessous, *arm in arm*.—Par-dessus le marché, *into the bargain*.—Le dessus du piano à queue, *the top of the grand piano*.—Avoir le dessus, *to get the upper hand*.

258. Ici, ci, là, form compound adverbs. Là-dessus, *thereupon*.—Par-ci, par-là, *here and there*.—Ci-devant, a term applied by the French Revolutionaries to persons who had *previously* been nobles.—Ici-bas, *here on earth*: ci-contre; ci-inclus; là-haut; d'ici là, *between now and then, in the meantime*. See also § 89.

259. ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES OF TIME.

| | |
|---|--|
| D'abord, <i>at first</i> | Tantôt, } <i>soon</i> , § 265 |
| Alors, } | Tôt, } |
| Puis, } <i>then</i> , § 260 | En attendant, <i>meanwhile</i> |
| Ensuite, } | Jadis, <i>formerly</i> |
| Quand, <i>when</i> | Jusqu'alors, <i>up till then</i> |
| Déjà, <i>already</i> | Jusqu'ici, <i>up till now</i> |
| Encore, <i>yet, still</i> | Plus tôt, <i>sooner</i> , § 264 |
| Enfin, <i>at last</i> | Tard, } |
| Toujours, <i>always</i> , § 261 | En retard, } <i>late</i> , § 263 |
| Jamais, <i>never, ever</i> | Plus tard, <i>later, subsequently</i> |
| Souvent, <i>often</i> | Depuis, <i>since</i> |
| Tout de suite, <i>at once</i> | Aujourd'hui, <i>to-day, nowadays</i> |
| De nouveau, <i>again</i> , § 262 | Hier, <i>yesterday</i> |
| Maintenant, } | Demain, <i>to-morrow</i> |
| A présent, } <i>now</i> | Avant-hier, <i>day before yesterday</i> |
| Auparavant, <i>before</i> | Après-demain, <i>day after to-morrow</i> |
| Après, <i>after(wards)</i> | |
| Autrefois, <i>formerly</i> | |
| De bonne heure, <i>early</i> | Cependant, <i>meanwhile</i> |
| Depuis quand, <i>since when?</i> | Longtemps, <i>for a long time</i> |
| De temps en temps, <i>from time to time</i> | Quelquefois, } <i>sometimes</i> |
| Désormais, } | Parfois, } |
| Dorénavant, } <i>henceforth</i> | Naguère, } |
| Bientôt, <i>soon</i> | Dernièrement, } <i>lately</i> |
| | Aussitôt, <i>immediately</i> |

Derechef, *again*, § 262

A temps, *in time*

Avec le temps, *in (course of) time*

Le lendemain, *on the morrow*

La veille, *the day before*

Sur-le-champ, *at once*

Tout à coup, *suddenly*

Tout d'un coup, *all at once*

Tout à l'heure, *just now, presently*

* * It is to be noticed that some Prepositions of Time and Place are also used as Adverbs: après, avant, derrière, etc., *e.g.* Il avait les spectateurs devant lui et non derrière. On the other hand some adverbs become prepositional phrases—au-dessous de, en face de, en dehors de, etc.

260. Then. The correct translation of *then* is a constant stumbling-block. 1. *Alors*=at that time. 2. *Puis* or *Ensuite*=next in order. 3. *Donc*=therefore.

Donc generally follows the verb: *puis* must begin the clause; *ensuite* may follow the verb.

Or, *well then*, *now*, is used as the English implies, in explanations, or in carrying on the steps of an argument, but must not be used in a temporal sense.

261. Toujours. Besides its ordinary meaning of *always*, it is used:

1. Like *encore*, *still*. Vous avez toujours mal aux dents, *you still have . . .* Also, marchez toujours, *keep on walking*.

2. = *Anyhow*. C'était le 12 ou le 13, un jeudi toujours, *it was the 12th or 13th, anyhow a Thursday*.—Toujours est-il que . . ., *anyhow, the fact remains that . . .*

262. Again. 1. *De nouveau*, *Derechef*. Elle éclata de rire de nouveau.—La sonnette tinta derechef plusieurs fois.

2. It may often be neatly translated by a verb containing the prefix *re-*. As—Je vous reverrai demain, *I will see you again to-morrow*. Other verbs are—Retrouver, refermer, refaire, réimprimer, rouvrir, etc.

3. *Encore* can sometimes be translated *again*, but it carries with it the idea of *still more*; denotes *continuance*. Encore une fois, *again, still more*.—Encore une lettre, *one more letter*.—Quoi! vous le faites encore! *you are doing it again, continue to do it!*

263. Tard, En retard. *Tard* is “late” absolutely; *en retard* is “late” in reference to an appointed time. Thus:—

Il se fait tard, *it is getting late*.—Le train arrive en retard, *i.e. after it is due*.

Obs. i. "I am late" cannot be translated by *je suis tard*: we must say, *j'arrive tard*. *Il est tard* is always impersonal.

ii. The opposite of *en retard* is *en avance*. Note, in speaking of a clock, *retarder*=*to be slow*, *avancer*=*to be fast*.

264. Plus tôt, Plutôt. *Plus tôt* is "sooner," *Plutôt* is "rather." Thus:—Emile se lève plus tôt que Paul.—Plutôt la mort que la honte.—Plutôt que de faire de telles choses, je mourrais dix fois.

Remember that **Bientôt** is the ordinary word for *soon*. Its comparative is **Plus tôt**. Superlative, **Au plus tôt**, *at soonest, as soon as possible*.

265. Tantôt . . . tantôt=at one time . . . at another time (Latin, iam . . . iam). *E.g.* Tantôt il me regarde, tantôt il baisse les yeux.

266. Notice the following idioms (Adverbial phrases of time and place):

De haut en bas, *from top to bottom*.

De loin en loin, *from time to time, at intervals*

Loin des yeux loin du cœur, *out of sight out of mind*.

D'aussi loin qu'il l'aperçut, *the moment he saw her*.

Il sauta à bas de son cheval, *leaped off his horse*.

Plusieurs jours de suite, *several days running*.

Deux voitures de front, *two carriages abreast*.

Tôt ou tard, *sooner or later*.

Il est à l'étranger, *abroad*.

Se promener de long en large sur le pont, *up and down the deck*.

Il sera de retour dans quinze jours, *he will be back in a fortnight*.

En bas de la colline, *at the bottom of the hill*.

Tâchez d'arriver à temps, *try to arrive in time*.

Avec le temps vous en viendrez à bout, *you'll manage it in time*.

267. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION, DOUBT.

Oui, Non, *yes, no*

Si, *yes*

Certes, *certainly*

Vraiment, *really*

Sans doute, *doubtless*

Ne . . . pas, *not*

Ne . . . point, *not (emphatic)*

Ne . . . jamais, *never*

Ne . . . guère, *scarcely*

Ne . . . que, *only*

Ni . . . ni, *neither . . . nor*

Ne . . . plus, *no more*

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Non plus, (<i>not</i>) <i>either</i> | Non seulement . . . mais |
| Nullement, <i>in no wise</i> | encore, mais aussi, <i>not</i> |
| Pas du tout, <i>not at all</i> | <i>only . . . but also</i> |
| Pas encore, <i>not yet</i> | Sinon, <i>if not, except</i> |
| Peut-être, <i>perhaps</i> | |

268. Yes is *si*, in answer to a negative question. Vous n'avez pas l'intention d'y aller? Si, *yes, I have*.

N.B.—J'espère que oui, *I hope so*.—Je vous dis que si, *I tell you it is so*.

269. No, Not. J'espère que non, *I hope not*.—Il fit réponse que non, *he answered no*.

Non negatives adjectives and phrases. *E.g.* des photographies non montées, *unmounted*.—Elle reçut l'argent, non comme une récompense mais comme une dette.—Je me demande s'il viendra ou non.

Cp. also—Il y avait un autre chalet, pas très loin, *not far off*.
Je crains les résultats non pas pour moi mais pour vous.

Rien, jamais, personne can stand without *ne* when no verb is expressed; but **pas** and **plus** must have a complement:

| | |
|---|---|
| Que faites-vous? Rien, <i>nothing</i> . | Pas mal (§ 252). |
| Qui avez-vous vu? Personne, <i>no one</i> . | Plus maintenant, <i>not now</i> . |
| Est-ce que vous l'avez lu? Jamais, <i>never</i> . | Plus de fromage, <i>no more cheese</i> . |
| Jamais de la vie, <i>never in my life</i> . | Pas du tout; and even, du tout, <i>not at all</i> . |
| Pas un, <i>not one</i> . | Pas que je sache, <i>not that I know</i> . |
| Pas encore, <i>not yet</i> . | |

N.B.—Be careful not to use *pas* in combination with *jamais, plus, point, rien*, etc. But one can combine *plus rien*, no more; *plus jamais*, never again; *jamais personne*, never anybody; *plus personne*.

270. Position of Negative with Infinitive. It is usual to place *ne pas, ne plus, ne point, ne jamais, ne rien*, before the infinitive. *E.g.* Tâchez de ne pas vous éloigner.—Vous feriez mieux de ne rien dire.

Obs. A few adverbs, as *heureusement, certainement, cependant, peut-être, même*, etc., are often put between the verb and *pas*. *E.g.* Son garde n'avait certainement pas peur de lui.—Cette solitude n'était cependant pas complète.—Vous ne m'avez seulement pas regardé.

271. Peut-être, standing first in its sentence, requires the inverted (interrogative) form of the verb (§ 154).

To avoid this, we often have *peut-être que* (il peut être que); and by extension, *heureusement que*, *apparemment que*, *sans doute que*. *E.g.* Peut-être qu'il reviendra bientôt.—Heureusement qu'elle l'empêcha de le faire.—Sans doute qu'il viendra.

272. Jamais, standing first for emphasis, does not, as in English, require the inverted form of the verb; and the indefinite article is often omitted with the subject. *E.g.* Jamais poète n'avait écrit de meilleurs vers, *never had poet written better verse*.

273. A few negative phrases:

Ni moi non plus, *nor I either*.

Il n'y a plus de dragons, *there are no dragons now*.

Il n'y avait rien à faire sinon (*except*) de la ramener chez son père.

Le train ne part qu'à 3 heures, *not till*. (§ 334.)

Il ne m'en reste que dix, *I have only ten left*.

Je n'ai guère jamais, *or*, je n'ai presque jamais, *I have hardly ever*.

Je n'ai rencontré presque personne, *I met hardly anyone*.

Les troupes n'étaient ni braves ni disciplinées, *neither . . . nor*.

NE WITHOUT PAS.

274: A. In dependent Sentences.

1. After *depuis que*, *il y a que*, in compound tenses.

E.g. Il y a trois jours que je ne l'ai vu, *it is 3 days since I saw him, i.e. I saw him 3 days ago and have not seen him since*.

Il a bien changé depuis que je ne l'ai vu.

(In simple tenses *ne . . . pas* is used:—Il avait bien changé depuis que je ne le voyais pas.)

2. In *comparative sentences* and after *verbs of fear*, when the principal verb is affirmative.

E.g. Cela coûte moins cher que je ne l'avais supposé.

Je crains qu'il ne meure.

But—Il n'est pas plus heureux qu'il l'était.

N'ayez pas peur que j'accomplisse mon dessein.

3. After *douter*, *nier*, *désespérer* (negatively or interrogatively); and after verbs of *preventing* (empêcher, prendre garde, éviter).

Je ne doute pas que sa vie ne soit heureuse.

Empêchez qu'il ne vienne.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous voie.

4. After *à moins que*, and sometimes *avant que*, *sans que*.

À moins que vous ne me suiviez.

Avant que la neige n'arrive.

5. In *negative sentences* introduced by relative pronoun with *consecutive* force.

E.g. Il n'y a pas d'homme qui ne puisse comprendre.

[In groups 2, 3, 4 above, the *ne* may be omitted.]

275. B. In principal Sentences.

1. With *pouvoir, savoir, oser, cesser, bouger*, *pas* is frequently omitted, especially when followed by an Infinitive.

Je ne peux m'en souvenir.—Il ne cesse de travailler.

With *savoir* in the sense of *pouvoir*, *pas* is always omitted, e.g. je ne sais nager. Notice especially the conditional:—Je ne saurais vous dire, *I cannot tell you*. In its proper sense of *to know*, however, *pas* must be inserted:—Il ne sait pas sa leçon, *he does not know his lesson*.

2. *Que ne* = why not? always exclamative. *Que ne me laissiez-vous mourir?* (Cp. Lat., quin potius pacem aeternam exercemus.)

Note these phrases:—A Dieu ne plaise, *heaven forbid!*—N'en déplaie à votre Altesse, *may it please your highness!*—Je n'ai que faire de, *I have no need of.*—N'importe, *no matter.*—Je n'ai garde de le perdre, *I'll take good care not to lose it.*—Si je ne me trompe, *unless I am mistaken.*

POSITION OF ADVERBS.

276. As a general rule, adverbs stand after the verb they qualify. They cannot be placed between a personal pronoun and its verb—*I often sing*, is in French, *je chante souvent*. For the sake of emphasis adverbs are often placed first in the sentence. Much is left to the style and taste of the writer; no definite rule can be given.

XXVII. PREPOSITIONS

277. Simple prepositions, with their primary meanings:

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| A, <i>to, at</i> | Excepté, <i>except</i> |
| Après, <i>after</i> | Hors, <i>hormis, except</i> |
| Avant, <i>before (of time)</i> | Malgré, <i>in spite of</i> |
| Avec, <i>with</i> | Outre, <i>besides</i> |
| Chez, <i>at the house of</i> | Par, <i>by, through</i> |
| Contre, <i>against</i> | Parmi, <i>among</i> |
| Dans, <i>in, into</i> | Pendant, <i>during</i> |
| De, <i>of, from</i> | Pour, <i>for</i> |
| Depuis, <i>since</i> | Sans, <i>without</i> |
| Derrière, <i>behind</i> | Sauf, <i>except</i> |
| Dès, <i>from (of time)</i> | Selon, <i>according to</i> (N.B., <i>not</i> |
| Devant, <i>before (of place)</i> | selon à) |
| Durant, <i>during</i> | Sous, <i>under</i> |
| En, <i>in, into</i> | Suivant, <i>according to</i> |
| Entre, <i>between</i> | Sur, <i>on, upon</i> |
| Envers, <i>towards (of feeling</i> | Touchant, <i>concerning</i> |
| <i>and conduct)</i> | Vers, <i>towards (of place)</i> |

Many of the above are adverbs also. Excepté, pendant, durant, suivant, touchant, are originally participles.

Compound Prepositions :

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| A cause de, <i>because of</i> | Auprès de, <i>near, compared with</i> |
| A côté de, <i>beside</i> | |
| A force de, <i>by dint of</i> | Autour de, <i>round</i> |
| A l'égard de, <i>with respect to</i> | D'après, <i>according to</i> |
| A l'exception de, <i>except</i> | En arrière de, <i>behind</i> |
| A moins de, <i>without</i> | En avant de, <i>in front of</i> |
| A travers, <i>} through</i> | En dépit de, <i>in spite of</i> |
| Au travers de, <i>} across</i> | Faute de, <i>for want of</i> |
| Au-dehors de, <i>outside</i> | Grâce à, <i>thanks to</i> |
| Au-delà de, <i>beyond</i> | Jusqu'à, <i>up to</i> |
| Au-dessous de, <i>under</i> | Le long de, <i>along</i> |
| Au-dessus de, <i>above</i> | Lors de, <i>at the time of</i> |
| Au-devant de, <i>in front of,</i> <i>to meet</i> | Près de, <i>near (of place)</i> |
| Au lieu de, <i>instead of</i> | Quant à, <i>with regard to</i> |
| | Vis-à-vis de, <i>opposite to</i> |

For Prepositions with Infinitive, see § 214.

278. En, dans, à; in, into, at, etc.

1. **Dans** is definite, and requires the definite article or the like. **En** is vague, and generally without article. Thus:—*Dans la voiture*=*in some particular carriage*.—*En voiture*=*in a carriage, i.e. driving*.

En is used with the definite article in a few phrases:—*en l'air, en l'honneur, en l'an, en la présence*. (*En* is only used with the definite article masculine when the *e* of *le* is elided before its noun.)

2. Contrast also:—*A la bataille de W.*, *at the battle of W.*; *tué en bataille*, *killed in battle*.—*A la campagne*, *in, into the country*; *en campagne*, *on a campaign*.—*A la bouche*, *in the mouth (e.g. a cigar, etc.)*; *dans la bouche*, *in, inside, (e.g. a man's tongue)*.

3. In expressing Time. *Je serai prêt à partir dans dix minutes*=*ready in, within ten minutes*.—*On peut aller à Londres en deux heures*=*in two hours, i.e. it takes two hours to go to London*.

4. **En** is used with names of Countries, **à** with names of Towns. *E.g. J'ai été en France, mais je n'ai jamais été à Paris*.

Names of countries which are masculine, or plural, take **à** + def. article: Au Japon, aux Indes, aux États-Unis.

Names of countries qualified by an adjective take **dans**: Dans la Basse-Bretagne, dans la belle France.

Thus also masc. names of provinces: Dans l'Anjou, dans le Kent.

Dans with names of Towns = *inside, within the walls of*.
Je me promenais dans Paris.

5. **Dans** means *out of* with *prendre, boire*. E.g. J'ai pris mes gants dans un tiroir.—Ils buvaient de la bière dans une tasse à thé.

6. **En** = *as, in the capacity of*. E.g. Il ne peut agir qu'en ami. Cp. Déguisé en brigand, *disguised as a brigand*.

En with gerund, see § 201.

279. **À** and **De** are in constant use in French:

1. In forming adverbial expressions of time, manner, etc.—e.g. à bâtons rompus, *by fits and starts*; de parti pris, *deliberately*; d'un ton grave, de grand matin, à chaque instant, etc., etc.

2. With Infinitive, see § 214.

3. Form compounds: bateau à vapeur, pomme de terre.

4. Represent the dative or genitive cases.

5. Represent various English prepositions, see below.

280. **Avec, Par, De**; with, by, through.

1. **Avec**, besides meaning *together with*, also denotes *in spite of*. As:—Avec toutes ses promesses, il m'a trompé.

2. The **Instrument** is expressed by **avec**. Tuer avec une épée.

The Instrument is also expressed by **à** and **de**. We have, e.g., à coups d'épée; pêcher à la ligne (*to fish with rod and line*); moulin à vent (= *driven by wind*); à l'aide de Dieu (*by the help of God*); d'un coup de hache; avez-vous de quoi vivre? (*the wherewithal to live*).

3. The **Agent** is expressed: (1) by **Par**, when the agency is external (passive voice), (2) by **De**, when the subject is considered as having some part in the action of the verb (especially with verbs of emotion). Thus:—Le brigand fut tué *par* un soldat.—Il est aimé *de* tout le monde.

4. **De** is used after the verbs surround, follow, accompany, cover, fill, clothe, etc. *E.g.* rempli d'eau, taché d'encre, suivi d'un chien.

5. **Through** is translated by **par** when referring merely to space traversed; **à travers** and (stronger) **au travers de** give the idea of passing straight through.

Passer par le bois = *through the wood (by the pathway)*.

Passer au travers du bois = *clean through (regardless of obstacles)*.

Also, marcher dans le bois = *through, in and out among the trees, etc., of the wood*.

Jeter par la fenêtre, *out of the window*.—Je jure par la barbe du prophète, *I swear by the beard*.—Deux fois par semaine, *twice a week*.—Par le temps qu'il fait, *in this weather*.—Par curiosité, *out of curiosity*.—Cette église est remarquable par sa beauté, *for its beauty*.

281. Avant, Devant, before. *Avant*, of time; *devant*, of place. *E.g.* Avant quatre heures il se trouva devant la porte de l'église. Avant Waterloo = *before (the time of) the battle of W.*—Devant Waterloo = *in front of (the village of) W.*

Au-devant de = *to meet*. Le cardinal alla au-devant de la reine. (This may be expressed also by *à la rencontre de*.)

282. Chez. i. Chez mon oncle, *at my uncle's (house)*.
ii. Cela arrive souvent chez les hommes d'affaires, *in the case of, with business men, that often happens*.

283. Depuis, Dès, since. *Depuis* includes the present moment, *up to now*. *Dès* implies *dating from* some point of time (it may often conveniently be translated by *on, at*). As:—Je l'attends depuis une heure, *I have been waiting for him for the last hour*.—Dès cette nuit je commencerai, *from this night I begin*.—Dès le lendemain, *on the morrow, the very next day*.—Dès le cinquième siècle, *as early as the 5th century*.

284. Durant (orig. a pres. participle) is sometimes placed after the noun. Sa vie durant, *during (the course of) his life*.

285. Entre, Parmi, between, among. *Entre* implies two objects; *Parmi* applies to more than two. Entre l'église et l'école.—Il se trouve parmi cette foule d'hommes.

Entre quatre yeux, *between you and me*.—Tomber entre les mains de, *fall into the hands of*.—L'un d'entre eux, *one of them*.—Entre chien et loup, *dusk, nightfall*.

286. Jusque is found in conjunction with other prepositions. Jusque devant la porte.—Jusqu'à nouvel ordre, *till further orders*. Cp. also jusqu'à quand, jusque-là, jusqu'ici.

Jusqu'à. i. Often used in combination with *depuis*. Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin.

ii. Means *even*. Les assiégés ont mangé jusqu'aux souliers.

287. Pour, *for*, must not be used for duration of time, which requires **pendant**. Restez là pendant quelques minutes, *stay there for a few minutes* (or omit the preposition altogether, as often in English).

Pour, however=*for*, in speaking of an appointment, or engagement for a period of time, e.g. Il a été élu président pour quatre ans.—Nous allons à la campagne pour quelques jours.

Donnez-moi pour six sous de chocolat, *three pennyworth of chocolate*.—Il est bon pour (envers) les pauvres, *good to the poor*.

288. Sans. Governing a noun, without article, = English *-less*. Sans arbres, *treeless*. Or, =adverb. Sans succès, *unsuccessfully*.

N.B.—Sans is quasi-negative. Thus:—Sans impatience ni émoi.—Sans chercher de subterfuges.

289. Sur, Au-dessus de. *Sur* implies superimposition, *on, on the top of*: with *au-dessus de* there is no contact implied. Sur la table = *lying on the table, e.g. a standing lamp*.—Au-dessus de la table = *above the table, e.g. a hanging lamp*.

There is the same contrast between *sous* and *au-dessous de*, *under*.

Une boîte de dix pouces de longueur sur treize de largeur, *a box 10 ins. long by 13 broad*.—Sur 200 hommes un seul fut sauvé, *out of 200 men only one was saved*.—Cette chambre donne sur la rue, *looks on to the street*.—Désastre sur désastre, *one disaster after another*.—Sur les deux heures, *about 2 o'clock*.

290. Près de, Auprès de. *Près de*, near, of time or place. E.g. Près de la mer.—Près de dix heures. *Auprès de* = *in attendance on, or in comparison with*. Auprès de la princesse.—Son malheur n'est rien auprès du mien.

Near, with names of towns, is often *près*, (*de* omitted)—Croix, *près* Roubaix. But: Il demeure *près* de Paris.

291. Vers, Envers, towards. *Vers* of place or time. *E.g.* Vers la porte.—Vers les dix heures, *about ten o'clock*. *Envers*, of conduct *towards* a person. Il est doux envers ses fils.

292. Repetition of Prepositions. *A, de, and en* are always repeated. As :—Une corbeille pleine de fleurs et de fruits.—Il était à tu et à toi avec tout le monde, *he was on familiar terms with everybody*.—En hiver et en été.

293. Certain Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions require discrimination :

| <i>Prepositions.</i> | <i>Adverbs.</i> | <i>Conjunctions.</i> |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| Pendant, <i>during</i> | Cependant, <i>mean-while</i> | Pendant que, <i>while</i> |
| Avant, <i>before (time)</i> | Auparavant, <i>before, formerly</i> | Avant que (subj.), <i>before</i> |
| Après, <i>after</i> | Après, <i>afterwards</i> | Après que, <i>after</i> |
| Jusque, <i>up to, as far as</i> | Jusqu'ici, } <i>thus far</i> Jusque là, } | Jusqu'à ce que (indic. or subj.) <i>until</i> |

* * * The following list contains several idiomatic renderings of English prepositions (and adverbs). The correct employment of Prepositions is a difficulty in all languages, and the student is recommended to add to this list for himself.

294. About.—De quoi parlez-vous?—Vers (les) deux heures ; *près* de dix heures.—Sur le point de vous faire visite.—Je n'entends rien à ces choses-là (*I know nothing about such things*).

295. Above.—Avant toutes choses.—Plus d'une heure ; *plus* de 200 hommes.

296. Across.—De l'autre côté de la rue.—Traverser la mer (*to go across*).

297. After.—De jour en jour (*day after day*).—Au bout d'un mois.—Il tient de son oncle (*he takes after his uncle*).—Le lendemain de la

bataille (*the day after the battle*).—Désastre sur désastre (*one disaster after another*).—Une peinture d'après Raphaël.—Demandez de ses nouvelles (*ask after him*).

298. Against.—Tout est *contre* moi.—Sa maison est *contre* la mienne (*over against mine*).—Le dos à la cheminée (*his back against the mantel-piece*).

299. Along.—*Le long* de la rivière.—Il suivit cette route (*he went along*).

300. Among.—*Parmi* la foule.—La maison *au milieu* des arbres.—Ils disent *entre* eux.—Un héritage partagé *entre* ses fils.—Choisi d'*entre* les prisonniers (*chosen from among*).

301. At.—Chez moi : à la maison (*at home*).—Chez les Smith.—Nous partîmes *dès* le point du jour.—*Au moins* dix francs (*at least*).—Tout *au plus* (*at the very most*).—*Au même* prix.—*Aux* pieds du prince.—Il l'a bu d'un seul trait (*at one draught*).—Il travaillait à son tableau.—Assis *devant* une table.—Jouer *aux* cartes, *au* cricket.—Il écrivit *sous* ma dictée.

302. Before.—*Avant* dix heures.—*Devant* la porte.—*Avant* de partir.—Quelques jours *auparavant*.—*Avant* Jésus-Christ, or J.-C. (*B.C.*).—*Avant* toutes choses.

303. Behind.—Les mains liées *sur*, or *derrière* le dos.—Ne regardez pas *après* vous.—Saisi par *derrière* (*from behind*).—Rester *en arrière*.

304. Below.—*Au-dessous* du niveau de la mer.—Le thermomètre est *au-dessous* de zéro.—Écrivez *en bas*, *en dessous*.

305. Beneath.—C'est *au-dessous* de moi (*that's beneath me*).

306. Beside.—Il est *hors* de lui (*beside himself*).—Assis à *côté* de moi.—D'ailleurs, de plus (*besides*).

307. Between.—*Entre* la maison et l'écurie.—*Entre* nous ; de vous à moi (*between you and me*).—Cinq à six cents hommes (*between 500 and 600 men*).—La différence d'un homme à l'autre (*between one man and another*).—Je le ferai d'ici à demain (*between now and to-morrow*).

308. Beyond.—*Au delà* de leur attente (*beyond their expectation*).—Il était à 4 milles *en avant* de nous.—*Au delà* de son pouvoir (*beyond his powers*).—Il me blâma *oultre* mesure.

309. By.—*Par* hasard.—Apprenez-le *par* cœur.—Voyager *par* terre, *par* mer.—On va plus vite *par* le chemin de fer.—Jour *par* jour.—Un à un.—Côte à côte.—Les pommes se vendent à la livre.—*Avec* votre permission (*by your leave*).—Plus grand *de* toute la tête (*a head taller*).—Au bord de la mer.—Ne jugez pas *sur* les apparences.—Une boîte de six pouces *sur* huit.—Je menai l'aveugle *par* la main.—Je le connais *de* vue, *de* nom.—*A* la lueur de la lampe.—Réglez votre montre *sur* la mienne.—Il est dix heures à ma montre.—Envoyez-le *avant* demain.—Il est *de* beaucoup le plus aimable de tous.—Nous étions tout seuls (*all by ourselves*).

310. Down.—Descendre la rue (*go down the street*).—Il tomba *dans* un précipice.—Il sauta *à bas* de la table (*down from the table*).

311. For.—Mot à mot.—Je pars *pour* Paris.—Prononcer *pour* et contre. (Cp. les pour et les contre.)—Je l'ai acheté au comptant (*for ready money*).—Il a sauté *de* joie.—Par pitié (*for pity's sake*).—Je vous remercie *de* votre bonté.—Célèbre *par* sa munificence.—Il y a trois semaines que je n'ai eu de ses nouvelles (*I haven't heard of him for 3 weeks*).—Il pleuvait depuis 3 jours (*it had been raining for three days*).—Il a été malade (*pendant*) 5 mois (*he was ill for 5 months*).—Il loua une maison *pour* 3 ans.—*Pour* la première fois.—Envoyez chercher le médecin (*send for the doctor*).—Il a la passion des fleurs (*a passion for flowers*).—*A* oientôt (*good-bye for the present*).—Crier *au* secours.—Encore des années et des années (*for years and years to come*).

312. From.—Ce monsieur souffre *de* la goutte.—J'ai appris *par* les Smith que . . .—*A* ce que j'ai vu.—Dites-lui de ma part (*tell him from me*).—De temps en temps : de temps à autre (*from time to time*).—De haut en bas (*from top to bottom*).—Distinguer C. *d'avec* P.—Il peint *d'après* nature.—*A* partir de ce jour-là ; dès ce jour (*from that day forward*).—J'ai pris (acheté, emprunté, volé) cette montre à M. Durand.

313. In, Into.—*Au* mois de mai.—*En* janvier.—*Au* nom du roi : de par le roi (*in the king's name*).—*A* mon avis (*in my opinion*).—*En* grande tenue (*in full dress*).—*En* uniforme, en civil (*in uniform, in mufti*).—Bras dessus bras dessous (*arm in arm*).—Par-dessus le marché (*into the bargain*).—Le chapeau *à* la main.—Il est arrivé *à* temps.—Vous réussirez *à* le faire *avec* le temps.—*En* sens inverse (*in the opposite direction*).—*Sous* le règne de Louis XIV.—Passer *sous* silence.—*Dans* l'espoir de saisir.—Une blessure *à* l'épaule.—Je l'ai lu *dans* le journal.—Casser *en* deux.—Un géant *par* la taille.—*Par* écrit (*in writing*).—*Dans* le courant de la nuit.—Le méchant chevalier fut changé *en* serpent.—*A* la belle étoile : en plein air (*in the open air*).—*Au* plus haut degré.—*A* trois heures *de* l'après-midi.—Le meilleur hôtel *de* la ville.

314. Near, Next.—Il demeure porte à porte avec moi.—L'orage approche de plus en plus (*nearer and nearer*).—Elle avait *près de* trente ans (*nearly*).—Presque tous les habitants (*nearly all*).—Il était *près de* mourir.—Vous avez failli le tuer (*have nearly killed him*).

315. Of.—Que deviendrai-je ? (*what will become of me ?*)—Un docteur en théologie.—C'est très gentil à vous.—C'est une façon à lui (*it's a way of his*).—Ne le perdez pas de vue (*do not lose sight of him*).

316. Off.—Il se tenait debout à dix pas de moi (*ten yards off*).—Il ne la quitta pas des yeux (*never took his eyes off her*).—Il en est quitte pour une amende (*gets off with a fine*).—Un bouton de moins à sa guêtre (*a button off his gaiter*).—Chapeau bas (*hats off*).

317. On, Upon.—Ayez pitié d'elle.—*A* bord de la "Marie."—Il gagne à être connu (*he improves on acquaintance*).—Là-dessus il est parti (*thereupon*).—*A* tout prendre (*on the whole*).—*Au* contraire.—Le pompier de service (*on duty*).—Cela m'agace (*gets on my nerves*).—*A* cheval.—*A* pied.

318. Out, Out of.—Éteindre les lumières (*to put out the lights*).—Le cavalier sortit *par* une des portes (*rode out of one of the gates*).—Il le prit *dans* le tiroir.—Je n'y comprends rien (*I can't make it out*).—Hors d'haleine (*out of breath*).—Il demeure *au dehors de* la ville (*outside*).—Il m'a invité *par* politesse.

319. Over.—*Par* toute la France (*all over F.*).—Criblé de dettes (*over head and ears in debt*).—Il triompha enfin *de* ses ennemis.

320. Since.—Il y a trois ans qu'elle s'est mariée (*it is 3 years since she was married*).—Il y a 24 heures que je n'ai bu (*it is 24 hours since I drank anything*).—*Depuis* ce temps-là.

321. Through.—Errer *par* les rues.—*Par* ce moyen.—Trempe jusqu'aux os (*wet through*).—Il regarda le cortège *à travers*, or *par* la fenêtre.

322. Till, Until.—Je ne partirai pas *avant* demain (§ 334). Il le remit *à* la semaine prochaine (*put it off till . . .*).

323. To.—Un poème facile à comprendre.—Mettre des vers *en* musique.—Chanter une chanson *sur* une belle mélodie.—Un habit fait *sur* mesure, *sur* commande (*made to measure, to order*).—Il joua son rôle *dans* la perfection.—Le chemin *de* Paris.

N.B.—Tomber à terre = to fall to the ground from a height.—Tomber *par* terre = to fall from a standing position.

324. Towards.—*Vers* la fin du siècle.—L'amour d'une mère *pour* son enfant.

325. Up.—Il grimpa *sur* l'arbre.—Enfoncé jusqu'au cou.—Il accourut vers moi (*he ran up to me*).—En haut (*upstairs*).—A moitié chemin de l'avenue (*half-way up the avenue*).—A mi-hauteur de la colline (*half-way up the hill*).—Le train arriva à B. sans aucun retard (*up to time*).—Mettre au courant (*bring up to date*).

326. Under.—A couvert (*under cover*).—*Sous* peine d'amende.—Fouler aux pieds (*tread under foot*).—Enfants de cinq ans et *au-dessous*.—*Au-dessous* de la taille ordinaire (*under average height*).—*Dans* les circonstances.—Ne le répétez *en* aucune circonstance.—*A l'ombre* de ses ailes.—*Sous* sa protection.—Nager entre deux eaux (*swim under water*).—Agir en dessous (*underhand*).—Nous l'avons forcé à mettre les pouces (*we have made him knuckle under*).

327. With.—Fâché *contre* lui.—Chargé *de* chaînes.—*Dans* ce but (*with this object*).—En faveur *auprès* de la reine.—Un homme à cheveux blancs.—Écrire *avec* une plume.—Je le dis à regret.—Il se débattit *de* toutes ses forces.—Il rougit *de* honte.—Que me voulez-vous? (*what do you want with me?*)—A bras ouverts (*with open arms*).—A peu d'exceptions près (*with few exceptions*).

328. Within.—*De* mémoire d'homme.—S'ils ne sont pas réclamés *dans* les vingt-quatre heures (*if not claimed within 24 hours*).—Je partis moins de dix minutes *après* l'avoir reçu (*within 10 minutes of receiving it*).—A portée de ma voix (*within call*).—Je suis dans mon droit (*within my rights*).

XXVIII. CONJUNCTIONS

329. I. Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Et, <i>and</i> | En effet, <i>indeed</i> |
| Ou, <i>or</i> | Enfin, <i>in short</i> |
| Ni . . . ni, <i>neither . . . nor</i> | Néanmoins, <i>nevertheless</i> |
| Mais, <i>but</i> | Or, <i>now (not temporal)</i> |
| Autrement, <i>otherwise</i> | Nonobstant, <i>notwithstanding</i> |
| Car, <i>for</i> | Par conséquent, <i>consequently</i> |
| Cependant, <i>however</i> | Pourtant, <i>however, yet</i> |
| D'ailleurs, <i>besides</i> | Toutefois, <i>however</i> |

Carefully distinguish *toutefois* from *toutes les fois*, every time.

2. Subordinating Conjunctions.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| *Afin que, <i>in order that</i> | Partout où, <i>wherever</i> |
| A mesure que, <i>as</i> | Pendant que, <i>while</i> |
| *A moins que . . . ne, <i>unless</i> | *Pour que, <i>in order that</i> |
| Après que, <i>after</i> | *Pourvu que, <i>provided that</i> |
| *Au cas que, <i>in case</i> | Puisque, <i>since</i> |
| Aussitôt que, <i>as soon as</i> | Quand, <i>when</i> |
| *Avant que, <i>before</i> | Quand même, <i>even though</i> (with conditional) |
| *Bien que, <i>although</i> | Que, <i>that, etc.</i> |
| Comme, <i>as</i> | *Quoique, <i>although</i> |
| †De manière que, <i>so that</i> | *Sans que, <i>without</i> |
| *De peur que, <i>for fear, lest</i> | Si, <i>if</i> |
| Depuis que, <i>since</i> | *Soit que . . . soit que, <i>whether</i> . . . or |
| †De sorte que, <i>so that</i> | *Supposé que, <i>supposing</i> |
| Dès que, <i>as soon as</i> | Tant que, <i>as long as</i> |
| †Jusqu'à ce que, <i>until</i> | Tandis que, <i>whilst</i> |
| Lorsque, <i>when</i> | Vu que, <i>seeing that</i> |
| Outre que, <i>besides</i> | |
| Parce que, <i>because</i> | |

Those marked * take subjunctive ; those marked † take indicative or subjunctive according to meaning (see § 231).

330. Quand, Lorsque. *Quand* is used as an interrogative adverb *when?* and as a conjunction: *lorsque* is a conjunction only, and is more precise than *quand*.

Quand vous voyagez, tâchez de profiter de ce que vous voyez.

J'ai rencontré ma fiancée lorsque je voyageais en Espagne.

For *quand* with Conditional see § 199 ; with Future, § 196.

331. Si—is not only *if* (hypothetical, Latin, *si*), but also *whether* (indirect question ; Latin, *num, utrum*).

1. *If*. The tenses are the same as in English, but the future and conditional must not be used (§ 197). *Si* is never found with the present subjunctive, but is often used with the imperfect.

2. *Whether*. The tenses are again the same as in English, and the future and conditional are used after *si* in this sense (deliberative, indirect).

E.g. (1) S'il fait beau, prends ton parapluie.

Je serais content si vous gagniez le prix.

(2) Dites-moi si tout va bien.

Il n'était pas certain s'il viendrait ou non.

An idiomatic elliptical use is very common in colloquial language.
E.g. Si j'y allais ? = what if I went ? = suppose I go ? = I'll go.

Whether . . . or (alternative condition : Latin, *sive, seu*), is expressed by *soit que . . . soit que, soit que . . . soit*, or by *que* with subjunctive.

Soit qu'il vienne, soit qu'il ne vienne pas.

Soit à cause de son habileté, soit qu'il fût descendu d'une noble famille.

Qu'il pleuve, qu'il fasse du vent, cela m'est égal.

332. Both . . . and. *Et . . . et* is used only in rather elevated style. Use *aussi bien que*. Sur la scène aussi bien que dans la salle.

or, *autant . . . que*. Autant les grands que les petits.

or, *à la fois*. A la fois patient et indulgent.

Either . . . or. Similarly *ou . . . ou* is little used. French omits the first *ou* (*either*) altogether.

Neither . . . nor, is *ni . . . ni*, which requires *ne* with the verb. Elle n'apprit ni à lire ni à écrire.

Nor at the beginning of the sentence must not be translated by *ni*. *Et ne . . . pas* must be used : also sometimes *d'ailleurs*. For instance :—*Nor was it possible to*, etc. Et il n'était pas possible . . . D'ailleurs il n'était pas possible . . .

333. Parce que, Par ce que. *Parce que* (*because*) should be carefully distinguished from *par ce que* (*by that which*).

Quoique (*although*) similarly must not be confused with **quoi que** (*whatever*).

E.g. Il est flatté parce qu'il est riche.

On juge les hommes par ce qu'ils font.

Quoique je rie, je souffre.

Quoi que je fasse, il me blâme.

334. Till. 1. *Jusqu'à ce que*. Je resterai ici jusqu'à ce que vous vous soyez assez reposé. Read, however, § 232.

2. After the verb *attendre*, use *que* with subjunctive. Attendez que je sois prêt.

3. **Not till** must not be rendered by *ne . . . pas—jusqu'à ce que*. Use *ne . . . que*, or *avant*.

Je ne vous laisserai partir qu'à trois heures, *not till three o'clock*.

L'idée ne me vint qu'après son départ, *it did not strike me till he had gone*.

Je ne sortirai d'ici que quand j'aurai mon argent.

Je ne l'attends vraiment pas avant demain matin.

335. Pendant que, Tandis que, while. *Pendant que* is temporal; with *Tandis que* there is an idea of contrast or opposition (*whereas*). As:—*Pendant que* je me promène, mon frère travaille.—*Moi, je travaille, tandis que* vous, vous lisez un roman.

336. Que, besides its use as the Comparative Particle, *than, as* (§ 53), and the Relative and Interrogative Pronoun, has various uses as a Conjunction :

1. It introduces the indirect statement=*that*. *That* is often omitted in English, *que* is never omitted in French. *E.g.* Je parie *que* je ferai mouche cette fois, *I bet I'll make a bull's eye this time.*

2. It is used to avoid the repetition of *quand, comme, parce que, lorsque*, etc. *E.g.* Quand il était petit et qu'il savait à peine marcher.—*A moins qu'on ne pense et qu'on ne dise.*

Used to replace *si*, it takes the subjunctive. *E.g.* Si je vois les géants et *que* je les vainque.

3. *Que* stands for :

Pour que. Viens *que* je t'embrasse ;
for *Jusqu'à ce que*, after *attendre*. Attendez qu'il fasse plus beau ;

for *Quand*. Le jour qu'il est parti (see § 114).—Il était à peine sorti *que* l'autre entra.

4. It is used pleonastically to introduce the real subject. *E.g.* C'est un drôle de garçon *que* le nouvel élève.—L'admirable chose *que* la parole.

XXIX. INTERJECTIONS

337. Interjections are formed from nouns, or verbs, or adverbs, or are mere exclamatory sounds, expressing grief, joy, admiration, fear, disgust, etc.

Ah ! oh !

Hélas ! *alas !*

Bien ! très bien ! *good ! hear, hear !*

Mon Dieu ! *good gracious !*
dear me !

Allons donc ! *what nonsense !*
come now !

Tenez ! *here !*

Gare ! *look out !*

Eh bien ! *well !*

Ouais ! *indeed !*

Bah ! *nonsense ! pooh !*

Bis ! *encore ! again !*

Bravo ! *well done !*

Ma foi ! *upon my word !*

Adieu ! *good-bye !*

Au revoir ! *to our next meeting !*

A bas . . . *down with . . . !*

Chut ! *hush ! hark !*

Paix ! *silence !*

Courage ! *cheer up !*

Allons ! *come along !*
now then !

Fi donc ! *for shame !*

Comment ! *what ! why !*
 Soit ! *be it so !*
 Vraiment ! *really !*
 Hein ! *eh !*
 Par exemple ! *the idea !*
 Dites donc ! *I say !*
 Dame ! *indeed !*

Au voleur ! *stop thief !*
 Au feu ! *fire !*
 A l'assassin ! *murder !*
 Au secours ! *help ! help !*
 Parbleu ! *of course not !*
 yes, of course !

Distinguish—A la bonne heure ! *good ! well done !* from
 De bonne heure, *early*.

XXX. CONSTRUCTIONS AFTER CERTAIN VERBS

338. The following short sentences show the construction after certain verbs. The simple accusative construction is only given when it seems specially necessary :

Il **abuse** de ses avantages, *makes ill use of.*

Il est **accoutumé** à faire.
 Accoutumé aux longues marches.

J'ai **achevé** de lire, *finished reading.*

Il s'est **adressé** au maire, *he addressed.*
 Adressez cette lettre.

Il s'**agit** de lui sauver la vie.
 De quoi s'**agit-il** ?

Aidez-le à attraper le voleur.

Il **aimait** à faire des farces.
 J'**aime** mieux sortir que de rester.

Allez prendre deux billets, *go and take.*

Cet habit lui va bien, *fits, suits him.*

Il s'**amusait** à lui jouer un tour,
amused himself by . . .

Ils se sont amusés de lui, *laughed at him.*

Il **aperçut** les ruines de l'église,
caught sight of . . .

Je me suis aperçu de mon erreur,
became aware of . . .

On a **applaudi** à ces paroles.

Il s'**applique** à apprendre.

J'**apprends** le français, *learn.*

Il apprend à jouer du piano, *learns how to.*

J'ai appris qu'il était parti, *I have heard that . . .*

Je lui **apprends** la grammaire, *teach.*
 J'**apprends** à lire à mon fils, *teach my son to read.*

Approchez une chaise, *bring up a chair.*

Il **approcha** la table du lit, *brought the table near the bed.*

Le printemps **approche**.

J'**approchais** de mes dix ans.

Il s'est **approché** du feu, *went up to . . .*

J'**aspire** à commander.

Attendez mon ami, *wait for my friend.*

Nous attendons de vous une réponse.

Attendez que le temps soit beau.

Je ne me suis pas attendu à cela,
did not expect that.

Attenter à la vie du roi, *make an attempt on the king's life.*

Je vous **autorise** à l'écrire.

Je les **avertis** du risque qu'ils courent.

Il **a beau** parler, *it's no good his talking.*

Je me suis **borné** à demander, *I have merely asked.*

Cessez de parler.

Il veut **changer** sa position contre la vôtre, *change . . . for.*

J'ai **changé** d'avis, *changed my mind.*

Je me **charge** de le mener, *I undertake to bring him.*

Chargez le chariot, *load the cart.*

Allez **chercher** le médecin.

Il **cherche** à se faire remarquer, *he tries to make himself conspicuous.*

Le prince **commande** l'armée.

Il lui **commande** de se retirer, *orders him to retire.*

Il **commence** à * se faire tard, *begins to.*

Il **a commencé** par l'injurier, *began by . . .*

Je vous **complimente** sur votre courage.

Le chocolat **composa** notre repas.

Le repas se **composa** de chocolat.

Je **compte** revenir bientôt, *hope, expect to . . .*

Comptez sur moi, *rely on me.*

Le juge le **condamna** à payer 10 francs.

Condamné à mort.

L'étranger lui **confia** son argent, *entrusted him with his money.*

Il se **connaissait** en vin, *was a good judge of wine.*

Je me **connais** à tout, *a connoisseur of everything.*

Je lui **connais** un bon naturel, *I recognise in him . . .*

Le guide lui **conseilla** de retourner.
Il **conseilla** de la prudence à son neveu.

Elle **consentit** à le recevoir.

Leur bonheur **consiste** dans leur modération.

Le projet **consista** à voler l'argent.

Nos provisions **consistent** en jambon, etc.

Il **conspira** avec l'étranger pour les tuer.

Continuez à (or de) parler, *go on speaking.*

Nous ne **convenons** pas de la date, *don't agree about the date.*

Cela **convient** à ce qu'il a dit, *agrees with.*

La situation lui **convient**, *suits him.*

Nos goûts se **conviennent**, *agree.*

Cette bataille lui **a coûté** la vie.

Cela **coûte** cher.

Je les **crois**, *I believe them.*

Je le **crois**, *I believe it.*

Croyez-vous aux revenants, *do you believe in ghosts.*

Je **crois** en Dieu.

Cela **décida** le roi à faire la guerre.

Je me suis **décidé** à revenir } *I decided*
J'ai **décidé** de revenir } *to return.*

Il **déclara** la guerre aux A., *declared war on . . .*

Ils **défendaient** la forteresse, *defended.*

Je lui **défends** de sortir, *forbid.*

Je me **défie** de mes amis, *mistrust.*

Demandez-lui quelque chose, *ask him for something.*

Je lui **demande** de me le prêter, *ask him to lend it to me.*

L'ouvrier **demande** à lui parler, *asks (permission) to speak to him.*

Il se **dépêcha** de le suivre.

Cela **dépend** des circonstances.

* Commencer à and commencer de with Infinitive, with little difference of meaning,

- Nous **désirons** voir l'effet.
 Le beau temps **dispose** les esprits à la joie.
 Nous sommes disposés à penser, *inclined to think.*
Dites-lui de venir.
 Dites-lui qu'il vienne.
 On ne **doute** pas de ta fidélité.
 Il se doutait de ce qui se passait, *suspected what was happening.*
 Je m'en suis douté, *I thought as much.*
 Nous avons **échappé** au naufrage.
 Il s'est échappé des mains de l'ennemi.
 Il a échappé au danger, *escaped.*
 Ce mot lui est échappé.
 Il **fait** des efforts pour se lever.
 Il s'est **emparé** de l'épée.
 Je l'**empêche** de sortir.
 Je m'**empresse** de le lui dire.
 Cela m'**encouragea** à m'approcher.
 Je l'ai **engagé** à lire, *invited.*
 Il s'est engagé, *enlisted.*
 Il lui **enlève** le drapeau, *takes from him.*
 Il **enseigne** la géographie à son enfant.
 J'**entends** sa voix.
 J'**entends** que vous m'obéissiez, *I mean you to obey me.*
 Il se sont entendus pour le voler, *have conspired to rob him.*
 Cela s'entend, *that is understood.*
Envoyez chercher le médecin.
 J'**espère** vous voir bientôt.
 Il **essaye** de marcher.
Exhorte les soldats à se battre.
 Je suis **fâché** de vous quitter, *I am sorry to leave you.*
 Je suis **fâché** contre vous, *angry with you.*
 J'en suis bien **fâché**, *very sorry to hear it.*
 J'ai **failli** tomber, *I all but fell.*
 Que va-t-il **faire** de ce billet? *do with.*
 Il ne fait que lire, *does nothing but read.*
 Il **faut** sortir.
 Il faut que vous me disiez.
 Il lui faut un nouveau chapeau, *he wants a new hat.*
 Je le **félicite** de son succès, *congratulate him on . . .*
 On peut se **fier** à cet homme.
 Il a **fini** d'attacher la corde, *he finished tying.*
 Ils ont fini par en venir aux mains, *finally came to blows.*
 Il m'a **forcé** (active) à le déchirer.
 Je suis **forcé** (passive) de le dire.
Fournir l'armée de provisions.
 Je me **garde** de vous gêner, *take care not to . . .*
 Dieu vous garde de mal !
 Il **habite** une belle maison.
 Nous sommes **habitués** à le faire.
 Il se **hasarda** à demander.
Hâtez-vous de revenir.
 Il **hérita** d'un jardin.
 J'**hésite** à le leur montrer.
 Il s'**imagine** être un duc, *imagines he is.*
 Il s'est imaginé de suivre, *took it into his head to follow.*
 L'éducation **influe** sur le caractère.
Informez-le de tout ce qui s'est fait.
 Le maire en a été **informé**.
 Il **insiste** sur cet argument.
 Il **insista** pour le voir, *insisted on seeing.*

Te lui **inspire** une grande terreur,
inspire him with . . .

Si l'on vous avait **instruits**.
Il s'instruisit dans l'histoire.

Vous vous **intéressez** aux écoles,
interested to hear about . . .
Je suis intéressé dans ce projet, *have*
a money interest in . . .

Je vous **invite** à dîner.

Vous lui avez **joué** un tour.
Il joue du piano (*musical instru-*
ment).

Allons jouer au cricket (*game*).
Il joue la froideur, *pretends to be . . .*
Les eaux se jouaient, *sparkled*.

Je **jouis** de la vue.

Ne **manquez** pas le train, *don't miss*.
Il a manqué de se noyer, *was*
nearly drowned.

Si je manque de réussir, *if I fail*
to succeed.

Il ne manque pas à ses devoirs,
fail in.

Elle ne manquait pas d'esprit, *not*
wanting in . . .

Il lui manque un œil, *minus one eye*.
Après son départ il nous manqua,
we missed him.

Il voudrait **marier** son fils, *find a*
wife for his son.

Il me défend de me marier, *to get*
married.

Il s'est marié à une femme char-
mante.

Il **médit** de tout le monde, *he*
slanders.

Méditez ces paroles, *ponder over*.
Je médite de vous visiter bientôt.

Méfiez-vous des pickpockets, *be-*
ware of.

Pourquoi te **mêles-tu** de ces affaires ?

Il l'a **menacé** de mort.

Il menaça de mettre le feu à la
maison.

Mettez-vous là, *stand there*.
Il se mit à rire, *began to laugh*.

Montez les escaliers, *go up* (neuter).
A-t-on monté ma malle ? *taken up*
(active).

Je me **moque** de vous.

Se **munir** d'un pistolet, *provide*
oneself with a pistol.

Cela **nuira** à ta santé.

Il faut **obéir** aux lois.

On les **obligea** (active) à se retirer.
Il fut obligé (passive) de fuir.

Ce travail a **occupé** dix ans.
Le régiment a occupé le plateau.
Je l'occupe à des choses utiles.
Il s'occupa à jouer du violon, *occu-*
pied himself with . . .

Il fallait bien s'occuper, *have some-*
thing to do.

Il a promis de s'occuper de moi, *to*
look after me.

Je m'**oppose** au mariage.

Je lui **ordonne** de les apporter.

Je n'**ose** vous le promettre.

Il **ôta** la vie à son ennemi.

J'ai **oublié** de remonter ma montre,
forgot to wind up my watch.

Tout à coup la porte s'**ouvrit**, *opened*.

On leur **pardonna** leurs fautes.

Ils **passaient** tous devant la maison,
they passed the house.

Il me passa son propre livre, *handed*
to me his own book.

Sa frayeur était passée, *passed*,
departed.

Il passa des heures à lire, *spent*
hours in reading.

Je ne peux me passer de votre aide,
cannot get on without your help.

Ainsi se passaient les jours.

Qu'est-ce qui se passe ? *what is*
happening ?

Nous avons **payé** une amende.

Je vais payer le tailleur.

Je paierai au tailleur mon habit, *pay the tailor for my coat.*

Il paye au tailleur 10 francs.

Il paye la viande 10 francs, *pay 10 f. for the meat.*

Le tailleur a été payé.

La viande est payée, *paid for.*

Je **pense** à ce qu'il dit, *think on, my thoughts dwell on.*

Que pensez-vous de cela? *think of.*

Le père pensait à le faire soldat, *thought of making a soldier of him.*

Il pensa mourir, *he nearly died.*

Si le temps le **permet**, *weather permitting.*

Pourquoi lui permettez-vous de sortir?

Si tu **persistes** dans ton entêtement.

Si vous persistez à faire cela.

Tâchez de lui **persuader** que . . .

Enfin il persuada son père, *convinced.*

Elle en était persuadée, *convinced of it.*

Je **plains** ce garçon, *pity.*

De quoi vous plaignez-vous? *complain of.*

Il **plaît** à tout le monde, *everybody likes him.*

Il se plaisait à lire, *took pleasure in reading.*

Prenez les gants dans le tiroir, *take out of the drawer.*

Pour qui me prenez-vous?

Il se prit à pleurer, *began to cry.*

Comment s'y prendre? *how set about it?*

Se prendre d'amitié pour moi, *to take a fancy to me.*

Il s'en prend à eux, *finds fault with.*

Prenez garde de marcher, *take care not to walk . . .*

Prenez garde à fermer la porte, *see that you shut the door.*

Il **pourvut** à sa sûreté, *provided for.*

Je **préfère** aller à cheval.

Le prince se **prépara** à partir.

Il **présida** l'assemblée, *acted as chairman.*

Il **présida** à la distribution des billets, *presided at.*

Je te **prie** de me suivre, *I beg you to . . .*

Je l'ai **prié** à dîner, *I invited.*

Nous **progressons** dans notre éducation.

Elle a **promis** à sa mère de chanter.

La route que je me **propose** de prendre.

Je veux me **réconcilier** avec mon ennemi.

Quand je **réfléchis** à mon avenir.

Réfléchissez sur ces propositions.

Il a **refusé** de m'accompagner.

Regardez cette maison comme la vôtre, *consider as your own.*

Je ne regarde pas à un centime, *not particular to a centime.*

Les fleurs **réjouissent** les yeux, *delight.*

Ne vous réjouissez pas trop d'avance, Je me réjouis de vieillir.

Remédier à un mal.

Je vous **remercie** de votre bonté, *I thank you for your kindness.*

Remerciez-le de vous l'avoir envoyé, *thank him for sending it to you.*

Il a **renoncé** à tout, *given up.*

Je m'en **repens**, *repent it.*

Répondez-lui vite, *answer him.*

Ju lui réponds de votre conduite, *am answerable to him for . . .*

Il **reproche** au garçon ses erreurs, *reproaches the boy with his faults.*

La vie qu'il menait lui **répugnait**.

Nous avons **résisté** à la tentation.

Il **résolut** d'aller le voir.

Il se **résolut** à aller le voir.

Il **retira** son fils de l'école, *took away*.

Après avoir parlé, il se **retira**, *retired*.

J'ai **réussi** à le prendre.

De quoi **riez-vous**? *what are you laughing at?*

On se **rit** de mes vains efforts, *make game of*.

Ce domestique le **servait** depuis 3 ans.

Il lui **servait** de guide, *served as guide*.

Cela ne sert qu'à le **fâcher**, *only serves to*.

A quoi sert cet outil? *what is this tool useful for?*

Il s'est **servi** de ce savon, *used this soap*.

Cela ne sert à rien, *serves no purpose*.

Songez à ce qu'il a dit.

Pouvez-vous songer à revenir?

Je me **souviens** bien de cela.

Je me **souviens** d'avoir vu cela.

Le tonnerre **succéda** à l'éclair.

Si vous **survivez** à la bataille.

Tâchez d'avaler un morceau.

Nous ne **tarderons** pas à les dépasser, *shall not be long in overtaking*.

Il me tarde de le revoir, *long to . . .*

Il **tient** de son oncle, *takes after his uncle*.

Il **tient** à la vie, *values his life*.

Il **tient** à conserver sa liberté, *is anxious to*.

De qui tenez-vous cela? *who told you that?*

Ce qui **touche** ma famille, *concerns*.

Ne touchez pas à ces choses, *don't meddle with . . .*

On le **traita** de citoyen, *called, dubbed*.

Il le **traita** en esclave, *treated as . . .*

Le roi **triomphe** de ses ennemis, *triumphs over*.

Il **usait** du privilège, *used*.

User ses souliers, *to wear out*.

Il se **vante** de l'avoir tué.

Je me **venge** de mes ennemis.

Venez voir les tableaux, *come and see*.

Je viens de les acheter, *have just bought*.

S'il vient à passer, *if he happens to pass*.

On lui a **volé** 100 francs.

Que **voulez-vous**?

Où **voulez-vous** aller?

Où **voulez-vous** que j'aille?

Il en voulait à ce garçon, *had a grudge against . . .*

Vouloir du bien à quelqu'un, *wish some one well*.

Voulez-vous bien me dire, *please tell me*.

REVISION EXERCISES

I. THE ARTICLE

A. 1. Many people eat black bread. 2. What a lot of time you have lost ! 3. The sheep and oxen are in the fields. 4. With brave soldiers we shall win the victory. 5. Three yards of cloth. 6. Sheep are killed to give us food. 7. Horses are useful animals. 8. Baa, baa, black sheep, have you any wool ? 9. We will sell you three bags of wool. 10. Give me some more beef, please. 11. Have you pens, ink, and paper ? 12. Little Henry has been reading books written by Prince Rupert. 13. I have caught no fish to-day. 14. Big houses often have empty rooms.

B. 1. The Emperor of Russia is travelling in beautiful Italy. 2. What a good boy am I ! 3. The land was covered with snow. 4. In Japan you will see large forests and splendid gardens. 5. Cæsar, a Roman general, won many great victories. 6. I will show you something more interesting. 7. If you are thirsty, drink some water. 8. Old King Cole was a merry old soul. 9. His hair is black. 10. His house is built of wood and stone. 11. Wine which is called French wine does not always come from France. 12. Spring is coming. 13. She gave them some soup without any bread. 14. Huntsmen, horses, hounds, and fox rushed into the river. 15. The house was decorated with flowers and flags.

2. PLURALS AND FEMININES

A. Plural and meaning of :

1. vaisseau. 2. aïeul. 3. canal. 4. jaloux. 5. bois. 6. gouvernail. 7. mal. 8. corail. 9. émail. 10. fatal. 11. général. 12. feu (noun). 13. bétail. 14. cheval. 15. chacal. 16. genou. 17. travail. 18. détail. 19. ami. 20. perdrix. 21. acajou. 22. bijou. 23. bleu. 24. hébreu. 25. bateau. 26. fou. 27. château. 28. soupirail. 29. vœu. 30. œil. 31. fardeau.

32. colonne. 33. vertu. 34. mou. 35. principal. 36. égal.
37. clou. 38. noix. 39. blanc. 40. chou. 41. carnaval.
42. signal.

B. Feminine and meaning of :

1. âgé. 2. favori. 3. bon. 4. premier. 5. sujet. 6. coi.
7. contigu. 8. pareil. 9. voyageur. 10. bas. 11. épais. 12. long.
13. hébreu. 14. net. 15. vengeur. 16. chanteur (2). 17. accu-
sateur. 18. rouge. 19. épicier. 20. doux. 21. attentif. 22. per-
sonnel. 23. fatal. 24. italien. 25. public. 26. frais. 27. acteur.
28. fiancé. 29. leur. 30. roux. 31. trompeur. 32. grec.
33. saint. 34. glorieux. 35. sot. 36. complet. 37. meilleur.
38. demandeur. 39. blanc. 40. empereur. 41. pêcheur.
42. pécheur.

C. 1. abbé. 2. traître. 3. suisse. 4. berger. 5. tourtereau.
6. naïf. 7. plusieurs. 8. aigu. 9. gouverneur. 10. vieux. 11. vil.
12. cruel. 13. muet. 14. discret. 15. enchanteur. 16. gendre.
17. gentil. 18. jaloux. 19. serviteur. 20. latin. 21. paternel.
22. supérieur. 23. dévot. 24. bénin. 25. duc. 26. bouc.
27. ami. 28. créé. 29. courageux. 30. loup. 31. héros.
32. flatteur. 33. créateur. 34. paysan. 35. tiers. 36. sec.
37. jumeau. 38. lion. 39. bref. 40. coq. 41. franc. 42. nègre.

D. Translate :

1. The two Corneilles were born at Rouen. 2. Shakespeares
and Bacons are rare. 3. The Bourbons were kings of France.
4. These pictures are masterpieces. 5. Are your corals in the
drawer with your other jewels? 6. What beautiful rainbows !
7. This old peasant-woman is very amusing. 8. The lioness and
the she-wolf are the enemies of the shepherd's wife. 9. These
gentlemen are aides-de-camp of the generals. 10. The companion
of the empress is a flatterer. 11. My two blue enamels belonged
to my grandmother. 12. The new housekeeper of the old priest
is nice and kind. 13. The Jewess' young friends are mad but
very handsome. 14. The actress is wearing a white dress.
15. The Greek widow's eyes are beautiful.

3. PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS

Plural and meaning of :

1. arc-en-ciel. 2. gentilhomme. 3. basse-cour. 4. grand-
père. 5. ver à soie. 6. chef-lieu. 7. bonhomme. 8. beau-

frère. 9. gendarme. 10. procès-verbal. 11. hôtel-dieu.
 12. chef-d'œuvre. 13. garde-chasse. 14. tête-à-tête. 15. tire-
 bouchon. 16. abat-jour. 17. brûle-gueule. 18. garde-fou.
 19. porte-drapeau. 20. passe-partout. 21. vice-roi. 22. rouge-
 gorge. 23. essuie-main. 24. porte-clefs. 25. timbre-poste.
 26. gagne-pain. 27. perce-neige. 28. coffre-fort. 29. grand'messe.
 30. chou-fleur. 31. pied-à-terre. 32. hôtel-de-ville. 33. aide-
 de-camp. 34. sous-préfet. 35. cerf-volant. 36. après-midi.
 37. garde-malade. 38. garde-côte.

4. GENDER OF NOUNS

Give the gender and meaning of : 1. glace. 2. leçon. 3. jambe.
 4. bonheur. 5. nuit. 6. clef. 7. ananas. 8. personne.
 9. page. 10. courage. 11. vertu. 12. herbe. 13. épigramme.
 14. chose. 15. sang. 16. nez. 17. oreille. 18. vent. 19. langue.
 20. amour. 21. arbre. 22. fleur. 23. matin. 24. soir.
 25. journée. 26. paix. 27. musée. 28. garde. 29. faim.
 30. poste. 31. jument. 32. voyageur. 33. honneur. 34. couleur.
 35. paysage. 36. million. 37. image. 38. allumette. 39. ton-
 nerre. 40. tribu. 41. bateau. 42. eau. 43. automne.
 44. voile. 45. fierté. 46. richesse.

What is the gender of nouns ending in : -ence, -ade, -isme, -age, -sse, -ment, -x, -eur ? Give one example and one exception in each case.

5. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

1. Our best friends have abandoned us. 2. It is very warm, but it will be colder before evening. 3. It is not so cold to-day as it was yesterday. 4. He is the cleverest boy in the school. 5. My house is much better than yours. 6. The younger of the two men is more than thirty years old. 7. The richest people live in this street. 8. The cleverest of them is not as clever as I. 9. A wiser man never lived. 10. I cannot find the slightest excuse. 11. This tree is very high, but it is not the highest in the wood. 12. The hottest day in the whole year. 13. Less than 200 men were killed in this battle. 14. This is most annoying ; you have made one of your worst faults. 15. The country is more gloomy in winter than in summer. 16. It is in winter that the country is most gloomy. 17. Our lessons are becoming more and more difficult.

18. You will gain most credit by doing what he tells you. 19. The more I see him the less I like him. 20. This branch is exceedingly strong. 21. Most of the travellers had seen as much as I. 22. I am the more surprised to see you as I was told you had already left the country. 23. A most urgent demand was sent. 24. He is a head taller than his brother.

6. NUMERALS

1. 24 soldiers of the 10th regiment. 2. In the 9th house I found 38 prisoners. 3. 2392 books were published before 1st December, 1907. 4. A hundred francs are worth about 80 shillings. 5. My uncle will arrive on the 24th April, at 9.30 p.m. 6. Henry I. was the third king of England. 7. Thousands of dogs and millions of cats. 8. 31 horses perished in the flames. 9. Hundreds of birds were found in the snow, when the north wind was blowing. 10. Remain here until a quarter to five. 11. A year ago he went to Italy; he returns to-day week. 12. How high is this tower? 13. This wall is 5 feet thick and 15 feet high. 14. Four-fifths of the enemy have been captured. 15. This street is 280 feet long. 16. I am 18 years old and he is 19. 17. This chair is twice as comfortable as that one. 18. Last Tuesday I caught 21 fish. 19. We hope to start on the 31st inst. 20. The "Retreat of the Ten Thousand" was written more than 2000 years ago. 21. Have you ever read the "Thousand and one nights"?

7. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A. 1. I see him. 2. Give her this letter. 3. Are you speaking of her? 4. I will speak to you about it. 5. Will you not give them any? 6. Have you any? 7. I have none. 8. Have you not bought any? 9. He walks with you and me. 10. Who is happier than I? 11. Who are happiest, we or they? 12. Finish it and go. 13. Be quiet, and say no more about it. 14. She did not see me. 15. I have not seen her. 16. You were speaking to her. 17. I have not yet spoken to them.

B. 1. We shall give it to him. 2. You will not see me there. 3. Give it to me at once. 4. Don't give it them yet. 5. Don't speak to him of it. 6. Let us not tell it them. 7. He has not sent

142 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

it to me. 8. He will send me some. 9. If they had not sent him any. 10. I shall send him some there soon. 11. Be silent, get up quickly. 12. You will read it to me. 13. Send me some. 14. Don't send me any yet. 15. Has he spoken to you? 16. Has he not given him any? 17. Have they spoken to them about it?

C. 1. Would they not have read them to him? 2. I have asked you for it more than once. 3. I will give it back to you if I find it. 4. No, don't give it back to them, give it me. 5. Those songs are pretty; sing me some. 6. Give me ten, I have not enough. 7. You will not forget that you have promised me some. 8. It is I who am guilty. 9. I should like to send you one. 10. You ought not to have said it. 11. Have you sent for him? 12. Here are two: give her one. 13. These two girls are not like each other at all. 14. An idea occurs to me. 15. After that my son came back to me. 16. Are you the doctor's children? We are.

D. 1. *I* am not jealous, but *you* are. 2. If you and Cicero are well. 3. *I* like them better than he does. 4. I cannot remember it. 5. Get up and dress yourself. 6. It's *his* business, not mine. 7. He awoke and rubbed his eyes. 8. I am guilty, not he. 9. If I had shown myself to them, I should never have forgiven myself. 10. The window is open, but the door is not. 11. Your gracious words I shall always remember. 12. He and she detest one another. 13. He is very proud of himself. 14. If you go there, you will see her and me. 15. He alone is to blame, find him. 16. You said you would give me ten, but here are only six. 17. If you are astonished, I am more so.

8. POSSESSIVES

A. 1. I have my watch in my pocket but I have not seen yours. 2. The soldier drew his sword. 3. My friendship for you is very sincere. 4. Ours is the best house in the street. 5. His body is too long and his head too small. 6. Give me yours: I do not want his. 7. Show me your horses and dogs. 8. He was talking with my friends and I with his. 9. Don't forget to bring your paper and books. 10. A friend of his called on me one day. 11. Do not compare your profession with (*à*) mine. 12. The doctor has cut off his leg. 13. His hair is grey; mine is black. 14. He has cut my hair.

B. 1. Each country has its own laws. 2. I can't find my pencil ; I will take yours. 3. It is *his* fault ; don't blame my friends. 4. Get your hair cut. 5. Give me your lantern ; mine has gone out. 6. He has broken his leg, and she has hurt her arm. 7. I saw you with my own eyes. 8. Without answering they drooped their heads. 9. The sight of him made me quite ill. 10. Rub my arm, please. 11. Have you washed your hands? 12. Saying this, he rubbed his shoulder. 13. Do not touch my arm. 14. Striking his leg, he laughed. 15. He would have burnt his finger.

9. RELATIVES AND INTERROGATIVES

A. 1. The men of whom we speak. 2. Of what does he complain? 3. Whom are you speaking of? 4. Whom were you speaking to? 5. The soldier after whom we ran. 6. What have you heard? 7. Whom have you seen in the street? 8. The person whom I resemble. 9. On what is he seated? 10. The dogs and cows we have seen. 11. The man whose hat is lost. 12. What dog is barking? 13. The men whose sons I know. 14. My friend whose book I have lost. 15. The chair on which I am sitting. 16. My brother whose dogs are killed. 17. The houses in which we saw them. 18. What chair is he sitting on? 19. What soldiers are here? 20. Who is braver than this soldier? 21. In what room was he working? 22. The fields in which we saw the cows.

B. 1. Who has written this bad book? 2. By whom have these bad books been written? 3. What a beautiful cathedral! 4. What was he saying about the room we are working in? 5. Give me all you have. 6. What! what did you answer? 7. This is what he gave me. 8. The horse you speak of has just died. 9. What prison was he in? 10. The chair he is sitting on. 11. Which one is he sitting on? 12. What is he sitting on? 13. What is he eating it with? 14. Whom are you going to see? 15. There's a man whose honesty I know. 16. A man whose honesty is so well known cannot do what you say. 17. What a horrible sight he presented! 18. Which is the longest street in the town? 19. What has alarmed you? tell me what it is. 20. What is harder than rock, what is softer than water? 21. I have not seen the officer whose sword I found. 22. We write an exercise, after which we read our books.

C. 1. What is the difference between a rich man's house and a poor man's? 2. The train by which we travelled arrived too late. 3. A man whose face I could not see was talking to us. 4. Happy is the king whose subjects respect him. 5. What have you written your letter with? 6. What a terrible winter! 7. He spoke of that great battle in which so many soldiers perished. 8. Whose sword has slain this man to whom our country owes so much? 9. The doctor is a man whose talents I cannot praise too much. 10. The old man went to the carriage, the door of which he opened. 11. The thing he talks about is not always the thing he is thinking of. 12. The clerk on whose honesty I rely has deceived me. 13. He was well received by the Russians amongst whom he had taken refuge. 14. What has frightened you? 15. What is truth? 16. Whom can you alarm by your threats? 17. What task is more difficult? 18. What is more difficult than to write this exercise correctly? 19. What has made you do such a thing?

D. 1. The moment he appeared, I vanished. 2. He was asked to play the piano, which he did. 3. He reads a book, after which he goes to bed. 4. Get him to explain what he means. 5. What you complain of shall be explained. 6. What alarmed us most was the way he said it. 7. He had a blue beard, which made him look horrible. 8. That's what happened to us several times. 9. If you can't remember what you are going to see, I will tell you what you don't remember. 10. That's what he remembers. 11. Tell us what you have found. 12. Do you understand what it's all about (*s'agir*)? 13. You have habits which you must renounce. 14. The Alps are mountains the summits of which are covered with snow. 15. What one expects is not always what one gets. 16. Enjoy what you possess. 17. They at last consented to what I proposed. 18. The plan they consented to is not the one I proposed. 19. Do you know what he died of? 20. What is that fine building on the hill? 21. They say it will rain, which is probable. 22. Whatever he does, you always blame him.

10. DEMONSTRATIVES

A. 1. That watch is finer than this. 2. This one pleases me; I don't like that one. 3. You cannot do that; write this. 4. Do you know these gentlemen? 5. I know this one, but I have not

seen that one. 6. This garden is longer than ours. 7. That's what I want to do. 8. That's my intention. 9. This work is that of a clever man. 10. Do you like this coat and this hat? 11. No, I like your brother's better. 12. He is very poor; that is evident. 13. One can be mistaken; that often happens. 14. It is evident that you have made a mistake. 15. I fell from that tree; that pleased him very much. 16. The one you saw is not so pretty as my cousin's. 17. We should praise those who do well. 18. He intends doing that to-morrow. 19. Look at that man; he's a brave fellow. 20. Are you not ashamed of this? 21. They are very brave: they are a credit to their country. 22. My horse runs quicker than my friend's. 23. Those are my sentiments.

B. 1. His mother's carriage followed the queen's. 2. Do not disturb him; you know that that displeases him. 3. My father will come soon; that is certain. 4. Of these two carriages, the former costs £80 and the latter £90. 5. All who wait will get all they want. 6. The one you speak of is my brother's. 7. He works too much: it will injure his health. 8. What pleases me most is his modesty. 9. I don't like this one: show me that one. 10. If you had not written that, I would never have given you this. 11. I must get this box made before I begin to make that one. 12. Who said that? 'Twas Cicero who said that. 13. This one is his, that one is hers. 14. We have been told that already. 15. Is that your hat? No, this is mine. 16. Those we have lost can never be found. 17. It is quite certain you cannot find it. 18. You cannot find it: that's quite certain.

II. INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

1. Everyone knows that the earth is round. 2. The same thing happened every month. 3. One cannot please everybody. 4. Some one has spoken to me about it. 5. I saw something new in B's shop to-day. 6. My brother has several prizes; I have none. 7. We used to go to sleep every evening at 9 o'clock. 8. Both the generals admired one another. 9. These girls are like one another. 10. Say another word and I will beat you. 11. There was nobody in the drawing-room. 12. Such a house is seldom seen. 13. Such a loud noise is seldom heard. 14. Whoever opens the door will be punished. 15. No reward will be offered.

146 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

16. Find another reason ; each you have given is bad. 17. Neither window is open. 18. The sight of that poor man fills one with pity. 19. Each one thinks of himself. 20. We have seen nothing interesting to-day. 21. Some gave them white bread and others gave them cakes. 22. The affairs of others do not interest one.

12. *QUELQUE. TOUT*

1. However brave you may be. 2. Whatever faults you have committed. 3. However great his faults are. 4. Every evening we play cards. 5. However well you may build the house, in some 100 years it will no longer exist. 6. Clever as they are they cannot persuade us. 7. However wicked they may be, I do not fear them. 8. Great though their privations were, they resisted the whole winter. 9. I saw 25 ships or so a few days ago. 10. She learnt to play the piano when she was quite little. 11. He gave me all he had in his pocket. 12. The patient will take the medicine every three hours. 13. Certain persons will always complain of everything whatever their fortune may be. 14. Any man will tell you that. 15. The banker's wife, rich as she was, was never quite happy. 16. This meat is quite burnt. 17. Some one has stolen from me all I possess. 18. Whatever mistakes my exercise contains, I have done my best. 19. Ships, towers, theatres, churches, all was very beautiful to see. 20. She stood quite alone near the door.

13. *AVOIR. ÊTRE*

A. 1. We have had. 2. Have you been? 3. They will be. 4. We shall not have. 5. Have you not? 6. Were you? 7. Have they not been? 8. They were not. 9. I shall not have. 10. They would not be. 11. We should have had. 12. Was he? 13. He would never have been. 14. Has he not had? 15. We are not happy. 16. He is not tall. 17. He will have a cake. 18. We shall have a flower. 19. Though they were (subj.) not. 20. He will be having. 21. Thou wilt be. 22. Though I have a franc. 23. Will he not be sad? 24. Has he not had the ball? 25. Be content. 26. Let us have two apples. 27. Let us always be diligent. 28. Have you had? 29. Would he never have been? 30. We shall never have.

B. 1. The cat is on the wall. 2. Is your son in the garden? 3. The sheep are in the meadow. 4. This plant will one day have a flower. 5. Has the boy a cake? 6. Had the boys been diligent? 7. We have never been in a carriage. 8. Although we have never had the flowers. 9. Who are you? 10. What has he? 11. Why are they so sad? 12. Have you any? 13. We should have been very happy. 14. If you had been here. 15. There is a happy land. 16. There will not be any. 17. Were there some birds in the garden? 18. Would there not have been a battle? 19. He is not hungry. 20. You are wrong. 21. He does not intend doing this. 22. Were you not thirsty? 23. Have pity on (*de*) me. 24. I should have been ashamed of it.

14. REGULAR VERBS

A. 1. Do they love us? 2. They will not give us any. 3. Have we not spoken to them? 4. We were dining with them. 5. Did they find it? 6. Is he speaking of it? 7. Am I speaking to a friend? 8. We must shut it. 9. Bring it me. 10. They will have played. 11. You were finding. 12. Am I amusing you? 13. What am I eating? 14. Let us give it to them. 15. We punish him. 16. Have you filled it? 17. Do you blame him? 18. What are you building? 19. I did not hear him. 20. What have you heard? 21. They would lose it. 22. They are descending. 23. Although he is finishing it. 24. You must answer him. 25. That I may hear it.

B. 1. He will not hear you. 2. Why do you not listen to him? 3. I will wait for you. 4. Wait for them. 5. Let us not punish them. 6. Would they not have found them? 7. Answer me. 8. Having found it. 9. We should have spoken. 10. Have you not sold it? 11. They would not bring me any. 12. Will you hide me? 13. He has not spoken to me. 14. Leave me alone. 15. The roaring lions. 16. We sold him some. 17. Have you sold it? 18. I wish to shut it. 19. We must finish it. 20. They defended their country. 21. Wash me. 22. Punish him. 23. Wait for me. 24. Do not wait for me. 25. In order that you may not wound him.

15. REFLEXIVE VERBS

A. 1. 3rd sing. pres. ind., and 3rd plur. past definite of—*se hâter*, *se souvenir*. 2. 1st sing. perfect ind., and 2nd plur.

148 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

fut. perfect of—se laver, se reposer. 3. 2nd sing. impf. ind. (negatively), and 1st. plur. plupf. ind. (interrogatively) of—se dépêcher, se battre. 4. 2nd plur. imperat. of—se coucher. 5. 2nd sing. imperat. (negatively) of—se cacher. 6. 3rd sing. pres. and perf. subjunctive of—s'arrêter, s'apercevoir.

B. Translate: 1. I do not remember. 2. Get up. 3. They wounded themselves. 4. Let us hasten. 5. He was not washing himself. 6. If he had washed himself. 7. He hides himself. 8. Was he not hiding himself? 9. Hide yourself. 10. They have stopped. 11. Why have you stopped? 12. Do not deceive yourself. 13. Although he has got up. 14. We will hasten. 15. They will not have hastened. 16. He never hurries himself. 17. I want to get up. 18. Do you want to go to bed? 19. They have not perceived. 20. They would never have hidden themselves. 21. They love one another. 22. Let us love one another.

C. 1. I am mistaken. 2. He has stopped. 3. Were they not getting up? 4. They will go for a walk. 5. What is his name? 6. Let us wash ourselves. 7. Do not stop. 8. If you do not make haste. 9. Has she not sat down? 10. We have just made a mistake. 11. Are you going to bed? 12. Do you remember me? 13. When he awoke. 14. When did he awake? 15. Remember what I say. 16. They have hurt each other. 17. That is easily understood. 18. He uses my pen. 19. He was not using it. 20. Have you used it? 21. We have given ourselves a treat (*une fête*). 22. Do not make game of me. 23. Don't use it. 24. They would not have lost their way. 25. She has broken her arm. 26. The door opens. 27. You must go for a walk.

16. FIRST CONJUGATION—IRREGULAR

A. 1. 1st sing. pres. ind. of—appeler, mener, aboyer, acheter, payer. 2. Imperative, 2nd pers. sing., and 1st pers. plur. of—avancer, nager, celer, soulever, jeter, acheter, céder. 3. Pres. part. of—appuyer, tracer, nager. 4. 3rd sing. future, and 3rd plur. pres. ind. of—payer, lever, rappeler, jeter, peser, créer, espérer, noyer, renouveler.

B. Translate: 1. He pays me. 2. She advanced quickly. 3. Get up at once. 4. Does he call you? 5. Where will he lead her? 6. You must not throw it. 7. She will employ them. 8. We

shall hope so. 9. If the dog barks. 10. What time does he get up? 11. We were playing while you were studying. 12. I will buy you something. 13. Let us eat it.

17. IRREGULAR VERBS—FIRST LIST

A. Give (1) 3rd plur. pres. ind. and (2) 3rd sing. past def. of—*aller, boire, dire, suivre, devoir, prendre, vouloir, envoyer, vivre, voir, recevoir, croire.*

(3) 1st sing. impf. ind. and (4) 3rd plur. future of—*couvrir, faire, devoir, courir, battre, écrire, plaie, venir, lire, craindre, apercevoir, mettre.*

B. Translate: 1. What are you doing? 2. Whom are you writing to? 3. What would he have said? 4. What pleases you best? 5. Whom can one believe? 6. What wine has he drunk? 7. I have done nothing. 8. We must fear nobody. 9. I owe him something. 10. Some one sent them to me. 11. Do not receive him. 12. We should never have seen it. 13. Every one knows him well. 14. We know what you have suffered. 15. I have never read such a book. 16. Come and take some. 17. We perceived him. 18. Have you not perceived it?

C. 1. Have you drunk it? 2. Where would they go? 3. Do you believe it? 4. Tell it me quick. 5. Let us run there at once. 6. He received two letters. 7. Write it to me. 8. What do you want? 9. I should like to send you one. 10. Where have you put them? 11. I will make him eat it. 12. Although he did not know him. 13. I will cover them. 14. You must not laugh. 15. Do you know it is raining? 16. She knows what I have taken. 17. I shall see you to-morrow. 18. We shall have to write it.

18. IRREGULAR VERBS—SECOND LIST

A. Give (1) past participle and (2) 3rd sing. future of—*taire, haïr, confire, assaillir, absoudre, bouillir, acquérir, conclure, pourvoir, falloir, croître, coudre.*

(3) pres. participle and (4) 3rd sing. pres. ind. of—*luire, moude, vêtir, croître, vaincre, mouvoir, fuir, bouillir, maudire, valoir, cueillir, prévoir.*

B. Translate: 1. We cannot conquer them. 2. Follow me and be quiet. 3. You must hate nobody. 4. The ones you have

150 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

plucked. 5. Boil the eggs ; the water is boiling. 6. What is that worth? 7. The sun was shining. 8. We have concluded nothing. 9. He seats himself. 10. She is sitting. 11. Would they not have seated themselves? 12. Why are you silent? 13. They would have conquered us. 14. They will provide. 15. He was silent a moment. 16. They will pluck them. 17. Would she not have sat? 18. Where have you acquired this?

19. IRREGULAR VERBS—MISCELLANEOUS

A. 1. They do not wish it. 2. No one has seen us. 3. If we do not suffer from it. 4. Let us offer them some. 5. Can they not see that? 6. What are you reading? 7. After this he died. 8. Those who have opened it. 9. I know who has said so. 10. I should like to tell him something. 11. I have seen her painting. 12. We like him very much. 13. When was she born? 14. They would never have taken. 15. Do not laugh at him. 16. Will you follow me? 17. What are you suffering from? 18. I will put this one there. 19. She has been admitted. 20. It is believed. 21. You must (*il faut que*) behave better. 22. Let us go out before it rains. 23. They will have held them. 24. Although he is not running very fast.

B. 1. You say they will do it. 2. I do not believe they have seen you. 3. You know they cannot take it. 4. Could he not have sent me some? 5. You took it from me: that is certain. 6. The one I offered was put here. 7. He was always complaining of it. 8. They feared he was dead. 9. They would drink some wine if they had any. 10. Am I running too fast? 11. We must serve our country. 12. I cannot find yours: use mine. 13. Your friends are coming: ours have started. 14. Everything displeased him. 15. I fear he has not read it. 16. Who told you to keep silent? 17. I laugh till I feel (myself) tired. 18. I doubt whether the water is boiling. 19. Some are worth more than that. 20. Why do you not sit down? 21. Is that sufficient? 22. I must conquer or die. 23. The father died before the son came. 24. In order that he might not acquire it.

20. ADVERBS

A. Form Adverbs from—1. lent. 2. aveugle. 3. vrai. 4. nouveau. 5. hardi. 6. dangereux. 7. prompt. 8. présent.

9. gai. 10. assidu. 11. traître. 12. véhément. 13. parfait.
14. confus. 15. gentil. 16. long. 17. probable. 18. discret.
19. fier. 20. précis. 21. énorme. 22. éternel. 23. grossier.
24. poli. 25. galant. 26. pire. 27. mauvais. 28. constant.
29. diffus. 30. obligeant. 31. cru. 32. bref. 33. premier.
34. courageux.

B. 1. I saw about 25 ships a few days ago. 2. How long this road is! 3. Your hands are quite dirty. 4. Have you seen as many pictures as I? 5. The queen was quite astonished to see it. 6. How cold he was and how sad he looked! 7. How much is that picture worth? 8. You should have spoken to him before. 9. Are you not going to start? Yes, soon. 10. This is the way we wash our hands. 11. You have waked me too soon, I must slumber again. 12. She had so many children, she didn't know what to do. 13. He walked so slowly that he missed the train. 14. I love you so much! 15. How many have you seen? 16. So he died, and she very imprudently married the barber. 17. I don't know how you do it. 18. I was then only 20 years old. 19. First I came in, then I sat down, and finally I began to work. 20. As you don't understand, I will explain it again. 21. Henceforth I will ask (*faire*) you no more questions.

21. NEGATIVE

1. Never have I seen him before. 2. No matter, don't do it again. 3. I cannot tell you how cold I am. 4. No one knows better than you. 5. He is much happier than he used to be. 6. There is no one who does not know this. 7. He must not start till I tell him what he has to buy for me. 8. Nobody likes you: neither do I. 9. There is not a man but makes a mistake sometimes. 10. It is 3 years since I saw you. 11. It was a difficult task, nor had I the time to do it. 12. Sit there and don't stir. 13. I asked him if he was tired: he answered that he was not. 14. I have not spoken to him for four days. 15. I fear you are ill: you have eaten nothing. 16. He was absent longer than I had hoped. 17. Do not move unless I tell you.

22. TIME AND PLACE

A. 1. I saw her yesterday at 10 o'clock. 2. Next week we will go and see the cathedral. 3. Next year I shall be eighteen. 4. He

152 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

comes to see me four times a week. 5. A year ago I used to pay him a visit every Monday. 6. I beg you to start to-morrow week. 7. Start early, and then you can stay longer. 8. Every three days we have a French lesson. 9. In front of the door was sitting a dog. 10. I'm sure you will find him in the middle of the crowd. 11. In less than an hour all his money was lost. 12. Sit here by me. 13. We play cricket in summer and football in winter.

B. 1. The house we live in is four miles from the station. 2. He has been looking out of the window since nine o'clock. 3. My companion then left me and took the road to Paris. 4. Put your bag under the seat, I will put mine above. 5. The whole family has been in Italy for the last six months. 6. Stay there for a few minutes. 7. Meanwhile the admiral walked up and down the deck in silence. 8. At the other side of the street I saw a large hotel. 9. She shall have music wherever she goes. 10. How long have you been learning French? 11. My niece is abroad, but she will be back in a few days. 12. Whenever I play the piano the dog barks. 13. We have had this servant for four years.

23. PREPOSITIONS

A. 1. On a rainy day (a day of rain) we cannot go out. 2. This terrible war lasted for two years. 3. In the United States there are more miles of railway than in Italy. 4. This box is made of wood and iron. 5. Good-bye for the present; I am going away for a few weeks. 6. The field is 100 yards long by 280 feet broad. 7. Wellington's troops halted before Waterloo. 8. Before Waterloo, French armies were seldom defeated. 9. We walked along the bank of the river. 10. Calm yourself: I speak to you as a friend. 11. He threw himself on his knees before her. 12. If you will not keep quiet I will throw you out of the window. 13. This land is below the level of the sea. 14. The town is celebrated for its handsome monuments.

B. 1. Six out of the twelve judges are ill. 2. We have hired the house at 100 francs a month. 3. From month to month the famine increased. 4. Many French writers flourished in the reign of Louis XIV. 5. He has been driving about in a carriage for four hours. 6. But for the rain we should have already started. 7. In spite of all his faults, I like him. 8. We will sleep to-night in the open air. 9. He stood ten yards off and looked at me.

*si vous ne restez tranquille
je suis par là*

10. Tell him from me to learn it by heart. 11. From that day forward I never saw him again. 12. Stay within reach of my voice. 13. Between you and me he has come with this object.

C. 1. Read it to me word for word. 2. Your misfortune is nothing compared with mine. 3. In five minutes I shall try to run a mile in five minutes. 4. I went to the Smiths' out of curiosity. 5. You must not drink wine out of a tea-cup. 6. The besieged were so hungry that they ate even dogs and cats. 7. Opposite me sat a white-haired man. 8. For want of a nail the shoe (*fer*) was lost. 9. In the middle of the night they came nearer and nearer. 10. Sitting at a long table he was working at his picture. 11. With few exceptions the visitors were received with open arms. 12. The actor has played his part (*rôle*) to perfection. 13. Half-way up the hill he stopped and began to shout with all his might.

24. CONJUNCTIONS

1. He went to bed at ten and did not wake till half-past seven. 2. He will tell you all when he comes. 3. Prepare everything before he comes. 4. After he had gone we began to enjoy ourselves. 5. As soon as he entered the mayor began his speech. 6. If you should see him and have an opportunity of speaking to him. 7. I forbid you to go out until I return. 8. Ah! it's a grand town, Paris. 9. We will find the robber, whether he has two legs or four legs. 10. You cannot do anything without his knowing it. 11. Let us act so that no one perceives our intention. 12. Though the battle was long our losses were small. 13. As long as I live I will remember your kindness. 14. While we were sitting in the carriage the aeroplane passed over our heads. 15. Both the soldiers and the sailors wear handsome uniforms. 16. Come here, that I may tell you what I want you to do. 17. Hardly had he uttered these words when the whole room was filled with smoke. 18. This is not the first time, nor will it be the last.

25. INFINITIVE

1. I should like to hear you sing. 2. I hope to come and bid you good-bye before starting. 3. To deny this thing is impossible. 4. I will do my best to find it. 5. Do you think it wise to do so? 6. I cannot forgive him for slaying his two cousins. 7. She con-

sented to his returning after winning the battle. 8. What must be done to prevent him from seeing us? 9. You cannot do your exercise by looking at it. 10. To hear him, you would think he was to be pitied. 11. I often amuse myself by reading his speeches. 12. In travelling, we often spend too many hours sitting in a train. 13. How dare you speak in that way? don't you fear to offend him? 14. He began by inviting me to stay with him. 15. This task is difficult to accomplish. 16. And at once the enemy fled and threw down their arms. 17. To utter such a word was to betray his friends. 18. But why flatter me with such vain thoughts! 19. A house to be let: apply No. 16. 20. This box is too big for you to carry. 21. He is not a man to suffer such an insult. 22. The ship departed without our observing it. 23. I lost a lot of time looking at the pictures.

26. CONDITIONAL

1. Would he come to-morrow, if I sent the carriage for him? 2. Has he told your brother whether he would come or not? 3. I did not think he would arrive in time. 4. Even though he betrayed me, I should still love him. 5. Can it be that I have made a bad choice? 6. A great battle took place near this village, and fifty men are reported killed. 7. Could you tell me how far it is to the station? 8. I cannot tell you. 9. They would have arrived earlier if they had not had an accident. 10. One would have said that you had offended him. 11. She said she would not come down to dinner as she had a headache. 12. I asked him if he would be ready to come down as soon as he had finished dressing. 13. If you should see him tell him to make haste.

27. PRESENT PARTICIPLE

1. You will make more progress by working diligently than by talking continually. 2. We have seen many dogs running about (*dans*) the streets. 3. Leaning against a wall we looked at the falling stars. 4. The burning winds of the desert impeded the march of the roving savages. 5. The soldiers preferring death to slavery died fighting. 6. Seeing that all was lost they slew themselves. 7. On the bridge leading to the town he saw men assembling and heard them shouting. 8. We have spent a very fatiguing day sitting in a railway carriage. 9. I bring alarming

news : the enemy are approaching. 10. By defending themselves bravely they have won an undying glory. 11. You will arrive quicker if you go by train. 12. We have convincing proofs of his honesty. 13. A young lady running out of the house uttered piercing screams. 14. During the long hours of the night the sentinel, never closing his eyes, guards the sleeping inhabitants.

28. PAST PARTICIPLE

A. 1. She has sung : they have eaten. 2. She has not seen the queen. 3. They have had a letter. 4. We have arrived to-day. 5. What have they seen? 6. What books have you bought? 7. The houses I have visited. 8. I have never seen her. 9. Would they have heard her? 10. What towns have the soldiers taken? 11. The door is closed. 12. Have you closed the door? 13. No, I have not closed it. 14. The ladies have returned. 15. He has made many mistakes. 16. The letters I have sent you. 17. What mistakes has he made? 18. When they had all gone out.

B. 1. The 30 francs which are owed me. 2. I have washed myself this morning. 3. She has not got up yet. 4. In what have we deceived ourselves? 5. They have given each other presents. 6. I have read all the books you have sent me. 7. We believed too easily the stories people have told us. 8. What pictures I have seen! At what scenes I have been present! 9. We ran and arrived in time. 10. The earth will be covered with snow, as it was last year. 11. We have defended them against their enemies. 12. We have forbidden them to go to the theatre. 13. He did not understand what dangers he had run. 14. No one can come in except your friends.

C. 1. He has heard us, but we have not pleased him. 2. She went to sleep on her mother's knee. 3. Jill fell down and broke her crown. 4. The eggs that I boiled. 5. After having looked at one another a moment, they separated: 6. without having spoken to one another. 7. The miles I have walked! 8. The hours you have slept! 9. They have given themselves much trouble. 10. The trouble they have given themselves. 11. I have read all the books I could. 12. The lady I heard singing has the best voice I have ever heard. 13. How many pounds did you say your luggage had weighed? 14. Have you the pens I

asked you for? 15. What books have you heard read? 16. I have read many of them. 17. The little kindness they showed us has not hurt them.

29. *FAIRE*, ETC.

A. 1. He has had a large house built. 2. He is having a house built near the station. 3. They caused the old castle to be destroyed. 4. Get the door opened at once. 5. I think it is too hot to go to school. 6. Let us have the chair mended. 7. He had the robbers arrested by the policeman. 8. Do you intend having your house built here? 9. I cannot get him to eat. 10. I will make him eat. 11. I have made him eat the meat. 12. Can you make him eat it? 13. The father made his son write a letter. 14. The general caused all the prisoners to be killed. 15. She will not have any dresses made this year. 16. I will get the carpenter to mend it.

B. 1. When do you intend to get the box mended? 2. What has made you tremble? 3. Get the servant to bring them. 4. The carpenter whom I get to mend my chairs. 5. Whom will you get to build the house? 6. Let us have some brought. 7. Have you heard him sing? 8. Have they ever heard it sung? 9. You must have it mended. 10. Have him arrested, but do not have him killed. 11. He is praised for the things he has done, and not for the things he has had done. 12. Your threats have made her weep. 13. What songs have you heard sung? 14. I cannot get him to eat his dinner. 15. Get him to examine the question with more attention. 16. I shall get him to do it soon.

C. 1. It is difficult to make him understand that the river is too deep. 2. He gets himself photographed. 3. You will get yourself detested by everybody. 4. By doing this he has got himself detested. 5. Get yourself admired: don't get yourself hated. 6. You have made yourself hated. 7. I have heard this song sung. 8. Has he seen the actors playing? 9. We have seen a good comedy played. 10. The actors whom he has seen playing. 11. He has heard us coming up the stairs. 12. We have seen them killed before our eyes. 13. The boys whom I saw playing are not the same whom I saw punished by their master. 14. After having heard them calling he went away. 15. After having seen them killed he wept. 16. She has allowed herself to be persuaded. 17. She has had herself photographed

three times this week. 18. The piece which I saw played was a comedy.

30. MAY, CAN, MIGHT, ETC.

1. May I speak a word with you before you leave us? 2. I have done what I could. 3. You may be sure I will obey you. 4. What is one to do now? 5. At last I saw the man who was to give us so much trouble. 6. You cannot even write your own name. 7. Who could have done such a thing? He must be mad! 8. If it should rain, you are to return at once. 9. You ought not to have waited so long. 10. He might have run quicker if he had wished. 11. We had to get home before it got too late. 12. I asked that an officer might be sent. 13. I should like to ask (*faire*) you this question. 14. Should he try to run, stop him. 15. Thou shalt not steal. 16. He would play the piano all day if I would let him. 17. Will you walk into my parlour? 18. Very well, if you won't do any more, I suppose you must stop.

31. SUBJUNCTIVE

A. 1. I doubt whether the water is boiling. 2. Where do you want me to go? 3. He's the only man who can give you an answer. 4. Every one must be at school at 8.30. 5. He decided to give him a name that should make him famous. 6. A little before the curtain was raised the music began. 7. For the picture to be perfect it should contain a few more figures. 8. If we do not run quicker I fear we shall miss the train. 9. Upon this, the general ordered the horses to be brought to his tent. 10. I will find out a place where I can be quiet. 11. He ceased and remained quiet a long time without my wishing to interrupt his reverie. 12. I will do my best until the enemy is defeated. 13. Is it possible for a man to have such a cowardly heart? 14. I fear he is ill as he does not reply to my letter. 15. You must not lose this opportunity. 16. He several times expressed surprise that the young man was not in the army. 17. Books are the only friends which have never deceived me. 18. He did not doubt that his last hour had come.

B. 1. Were you not surprised that the doctor had not come back? 2. Let us admit that she is older than she looks. 3. He thwarted (*renverser*) one of the cleverest plans that had ever been

invented. 4. He was offended at such a question being put to him. 5. I left them on the table for fear you should forget them. 6. Let us wait till the weather is finer. 7. Before they returned from France they had learned the language very well. 8. I had only one hope to console my sad thoughts. 9. I cannot allow such a thing to be done here. 10. It is rare that such an accident has happened here. 11. The students waited for the professor to begin. 12. We shall not be able to start unless he permits it. 13. There was nothing to break the silence of the night. 14. I do not think she has come in yet. 15. Do you think I can offer him less than 10 francs? 16. It is not probable that you will escape. 17. I held her above the water so that the waves might not touch her. 18. I will serve you so that you will not have to complain. 19. I went with him until we came to the church door. 20. I will go on till I am tired.

VOCABULARY TO THE REVISION EXERCISES

A

to **abandon**, abandonner.
 about, *adv.*, environ.
 absent, absent.
 accident, accident, *m.*
 to **accomplish**, accomplir.
 to **act**, agir.
 actor, acteur, *m.*
 admiral, amiral, *m.*
 to **admire**, admirer.
 to **admit**, admettre.
 to **advance**, s'avancer.
 aeroplane, aéroplane, *m.*
 affair, affaire, *f.*
 after, après.
 ago, il y a.
 to **alarm**, alarmer.
 to **allow**, laisser, permettre.
 alone, seul.
 Alps, Alpes, *f. pl.*
 already, déjà.
 although, quoique, bien que
 (*subj.*).
 always, toujours.
 amongst, parmi.
 to **amuse**, amuser.
 animal, animal, *m.*
 annoying, ennuyant.
 answer, réponse, *f.*
 to **answer**, répondre.
 to **appear**, paraître.
 apple, pomme, *f.*
 to **apply**, s'adresser.
 to **approach**, s'approcher (de).
 arm, bras, *m.*; (weapon) arme, *f.*
 army, armée, *f.*
 to **arrest**, arrêter.
 to **arrive**, arriver.
 to **be ashamed**, avoir honte.

to **ask (for)**, demander.
 to **assemble**, assembler, s'assembler.
 to **astonish**, étonner.
 attention, attention, *f.*
 to **awake**, s'éveiller.

B

back, to **come**, revenir.
back, to **give**, rendre.
 bad, mauvais, méchant.
 bag, sac, *m.*
 ball, balle, *f.*
 bank, banque, *f.*
 banker, banquier, *m.*
 barber, barbier, *m.*
 to **bark**, aboyer.
 battle, bataille, *f.*
 to **beat**, battre.
 beautiful, beau.
 to **become**, devenir.
 bed, lit, *m.*: to **go to bed**, se
 coucher.
 beef, bœuf, *m.*
 before, *prep.*, devant (*place*),
 avant (*time*).
 to **beg**, prier.
 to **begin**, commencer.
 to **behave**, se conduire.
 to **belong**, appartenir.
 to **besiege**, assiéger.
 best, le meilleur, le mieux: to
 do one's best, faire de son
 mieux.
 to **betray**, trahir.
 to **bid good-bye**, dire adieu.
 big, grand.
 bird, oiseau, *m.*

- black, noir.
 to blame, blâmer.
 to blow, souffler.
 blue, bleu.
 to blush, rougir.
 body, corps, *m.*
 to boil, bouillir (*intransitive*); faire
 bouillir (*transitive*).
 to be born, naître.
 box, boîte, *f.*
 branch, branche, *f.*
 brave, vaillant, brave.
 bread, pain, *m.*
 to break, casser, rompre.
 bridge, pont, *m.*
 to bring, apporter, amener.
 broad, large.
 brown, brun.
 to build, bâtir.
 building, bâtiment, édifice, *m.*
 to burn, brûler.
 business, commerce, *m.*, affaires,
f. pl. (In Ex. 7 D, affaire, *f.*)
 to buy, acheter.

C

- Cæsar, César.
 cake, gâteau, *m.*
 to call, appeler : to call (on), faire
 visite (*à*).
 to calm, calmer.
 to capture, prendre, capturer.
 card, carte, *f.*
 carpenter, menuisier, *m.*
 carriage, voiture, *f.*
 to carry, porter.
 castle, château, *m.*
 cat, chat, *m.*
 to catch, attraper.
 cathedral, cathédrale, *f.*
 to cease, cesser.
 celebrated, célèbre.
 chair, chaise, *f.*
 child, enfant, *m.* and *f.*
 choice, choix, *m.*
 church, église, *f.*
 Cicero, Cicéron.
 clerk, commis, *m.*
 clever, habile.

- to close, fermer.
 cloth, drap, *m.*, toile, *f.*
 coat, habit, *m.*
 cold, froid.
 to come, venir : to come back,
 revenir : to come in, entrer.
 comedy, comédie, *f.*
 comfortable, commode.
 to commit, commettre.
 companion, compagnon, *m.*
 to compare, comparer.
 to complain, se plaindre.
 to conquer, conquérir : vaincre.
 to consent, consentir.
 to console, soulager, consoler.
 to contain, contenir.
 content, content.
 continually, incessamment.
 to convince, convaincre.
 correct, correct.
 to cost, coûter.
 country, pays, *m.*; campagne, *f.*;
 patrie, *f.*
 cousin, cousin, *m.*
 to cover, couvrir.
 cow, vache, *f.*
 cowardly, lâche.
 credit, crédit, *m.*
 to be a credit to, faire honneur à.
 crowd, foule, *f.*
 curiosity, curiosité, *f.*
 curtain, rideau, *m.*
 to cut (off), couper.

D

- danger, danger, *m.*
 to dare, oser.
 day, jour, *m.*, journée, *f.*
 dead, mort.
 death, mort, *f.*
 to deceive, tromper.
 to decide, décider.
 deck, pont, *m.*
 to decorate, décorer, orner.
 deep, profond.
 to defeat, vaincre.
 to defend, défendre.
 demand, demande, *f.*
 to deny, nier.
 to depart, partir.
 to descend, descendre.

desert, désert, *m.*
 to destroy, détruire.
 to detest, détester.
 to die, mourir.
 difference, différence, *f.*
 difficult, difficile.
 diligent, diligent.
 to dine, dîner.
 dinner, dîner, *m.*
 dirty, sale.
 to displease, déplaire (à).
 to disturb, déranger.
 to do, faire.
 doctor, docteur, médecin, *m.*
 dog, chien, *m.*
 door, porte, *f.*
 to doubt, douter.
 to draw, tirer.
 drawer, tiroir, *m.*
 drawing-room, salon, *m.*
 dress, habit, *m.*, robe, *f.*
 to dress (oneself), s'habiller.
 to drink, boire.
 to drive, se promener en voiture.
 to droop, baisser.

E

early, de bonne heure.
 earth, terre, *f.*
 easy, facile.
 to eat, manger.
 egg, œuf, *m.*
 emperor, empereur, *m.*
 to employ, employer.
 empty, vide.
 enemy, ennemi, *m.*
 to enjoy, jouir (de).
 to enjoy oneself, s'amuser.
 England, Angleterre, *f.*
 enough, assez.
 to enter, entrer.
 to escape, s'échapper.
 even, *adv.*, même.
 evening, soir, *m.*
 evident, évident.
 to examine, examiner.
 except, see § 210, 6.
 excuse, excuse, *f.*
 exercise, exercice, *m.*
 to exist, exister.
 to expect, s'attendre (à).

L

to explain, expliquer.
 to express, exprimer.
 eye, œil, *m.*

F

face, figure, *f.*, visage, *m.*
 to fall, tomber.
 family, famille, *f.*
 famine, famine, *f.*
 famous, fameux.
 far, loin : how far? see § 250.
 fast, *adv.*, vite.
 to fatigue, fatiguer.
 fault, faute, *f.*
 to fear, avoir peur de, craindre.
 to feel, sentir.
 fellow, homme, garçon, *m.*
 a few, quelques, un peu (de).
 field, champ, *m.*
 to fight, se battre.
 figure, figure, *f.*
 to fill, remplir.
 to find, trouver.
 fine, beau
 finger, doigt, *m.*
 fish, poisson, *m.*
 flag, drapeau, *m.*
 flame, flamme, *f.*
 to flatter, flatter.
 flatterer, flatteur, *m.*
 to flee, s'enfuir.
 to flourish, fleurir.
 flower, fleur, *f.*
 to follow, suivre.
 food, nourriture, *f.*
 foot, pied, *m.*
 to forbid, défendre (à).
 forest, forêt, *f.*
 to forget, oublier.
 to forgive, pardonner (à).
 fortune, fortune, *f.*
 fox, renard, *m.*
 friend, ami, *m.*
 friendship, amitié, *f.*
 to frighten, effrayer.
 in front of, devant.

G

to gain, gagner.
 game of, to make, se moquer de.

- garden, jardin, *m.*
 general, *noun and adj.*, général.
 gentleman, monsieur, *m.*
 to get (=receive), recevoir; to
 get up, se lever; see faire,
 § 187.
 girl, fille, jeune fille, *f.*
 to give back, rendre.
 gloomy, triste.
 glory, gloire, *f.*
 to go, aller; to go out, sortir;
 to go away, s'en aller; to
 go out (of a fire, etc.),
 s'éteindre.
 gracious, gracieux.
 great, grand.
 grey, gris.
 to guard, garder.
 guilty, coupable.

H

- habit, habitude, *f.*
 hair, cheveux, *m. pl.*
 to halt, halter.
 hand, main, *f.*
 handsome, beau.
 to happen, arriver.
 happy, heureux.
 hard, dur.
 to hasten, se dépêcher.
 hat, chapeau, *m.*
 to hate, haïr.
 head, tête, *f.*
 headache, to have a, avoir mal
 à la tête.
 health, santé, *f.*
 to hear, entendre.
 heart, cœur, *m.*
 henceforth, désormais.
 Henry, Henri.
 to hide, cacher.
 high, haut.
 hill, colline, *f.*
 to hire, louer.
 to hold, tenir.
 home, *prep.*, chez, *with noun or*
pers. pronoun.
 honesty, honnêteté, *f.*
 to hope, espérer.
 hope, espoir, *m.*
 horrible, horrible.

- horse, cheval.
 hot, chaud.
 hotel, hôtel, *m.*
 hound, chien, *m.*
 housekeeper, gouvernante, *f.*
 to be hungry, avoir faim.
 huntsman, chasseur, *m.*
 to hurry, se dépêcher.
 to hurt, faire mal (à) : nuire (à).

I

- idea, idée, *f.*
 ill, malade.
 to impede, empêcher.
 imprudent, imprudent.
 to increase, augmenter.
 inhabitant, habitant, *m.*
 to injure, nuire (à).
 ink, encre, *f.*
 insult, insulte, *f.*
 to intend, avoir l'intention (de).
 intention, intention, *f.*
 to interest, intéresser.
 to interrupt, interrompre.
 to invent, inventer.
 to invite, inviter.
 iron, fer, *m.*
 Italy, Italie, *f.*

J

- Japan, le Japon.
 jealous, jaloux.
 Jew, juif.
 judge, juge, *m.*

K

- to keep quiet, rester tranquille.
 to kill, tuer.
 kind, bon.
 kindness, bonté, *f.*
 king, roi, *m.*
 knee, genou, *m.*
 to know, savoir; connaître.

L

- lady, dame, *f.*
 land, terre, *f.*
 language, langue, *f.*

lantern, lanterne, *f.*
 large, grand.
 to last, durer.
 at last, enfin.
 late, tard ; en retard.
 to laugh, rire.
 law, loi, *f.*
 to lead, mener, conduire.
 to lean, se pencher, s'appuyer.
 to learn, apprendre.
 to leave, laisser ; quitter.
 leg, jambe, *f.*
 less, moins.
 lesson, leçon, *f.*
 to let (=allow), laisser, permettre ;
 to let on hire, louer.
 letter, lettre, *f.*
 to like, aimer ; I should like, je
 voudrais bien.
 to be like, ressembler (à).
 to listen, écouter.
 a little, un peu (de).
 to live, vivre ; demeurer.
 no longer, ne . . . plus.
 to look (=appear), avoir l'air : to
 look at, regarder.
 to lose, perdre ; to lose one's way,
 s'égarer.
 loss, perte, *f.*
 loud, grand, haut.
 to love, aimer.
 luggage, bagages, *m. plur.*

M

mad, fou.
 to make, faire ; rendre.
 march, marche, *f.*
 to marry, épouser.
 master, maître, *m.*
 master-piece, chef-d'œuvre, *m.*
 mayor, maire, *m.*
 meadow, prairie, *f.*
 to mean, vouloir dire.
 meanwhile, cependant.
 meat, viande, *f.*
 medicine, médecine, *f.*
 to meet, rencontrer.
 to mend, raccommoder, réparer.
 merry, gai.
 in the middle of, au milieu de.

mile, mille, *m.*
 minute, minute, *f.*
 misfortune, malheur, *m.*
 to miss, manquer.
 mistake, faute, *f.* ; to make a
 mistake, to be mistaken, se
 tromper.
 modesty, modestie, *f.*
 moment, moment, *m.*
 money, argent, *m.*
 month, mois, *m.*
 monument, monument, *m.*
 more, plus ; encore.
 morning, matin, *m.*
 mountain, montagne, *f.*
 to move, bouger.
 music, musique, *f.*

N

nail, clou, *m.*
 name, nom, *m.*
 news, nouvelles, *f. pl.*
 next, prochain.
 nice, gentil.
 niece, nièce, *f.*
 night, nuit, *f.*
 noise, bruit, *m.*
 number, numéro, *m.*

O

to obey, obéir.
 object, objet, *m.*
 to observe, observer.
 to offend, offenser.
 to offer, offrir.
 officer, officier, *m.*
 often, souvent.
 old, ancien ; vieux ; how old ?
 see § 73 ; old man, vieillard, *m.*
 once, une fois ; at once, tout de
 suite.
 only, *adj.*, seul ; *adv.*, seulement,
 ne . . . que.
 to open, ouvrir.
 opportunity, occasion, *f.*
 in order that, pour que (*subj.*).
 other, autre.
 ought. See § 186.

to **owe**, devoir.
ox, bœuf, *m.*

P

to **paint**, peindre.
paper, papier, *m.*
parlour, parler, *m.*
to **pass**, passer.
patient, *noun*, le (la) malade.
to **pay**, payer.
peasant, paysan, *m.*
pen, plume, *f.*
pencil, crayon, *m.*
people, gens, *m. plur.* ; monde ;
 peuple, *m.*
to **perceive**, s'apercevoir (de).
perfect, parfait.
to **perish**, périr.
to **permit**, permettre.
person, personne, *f.*
to **persuade**, persuader.
to **photograph**, photographier.
piano, piano, *m.*
picture, tableau, *m.*
to **pierce**, percer.
pity, pitié, *f.*
to **pity**, plaindre ; avoir pitié de.
place, to **take**, avoir lieu.
plan, plan, *m.*
plant, plante, *f.*
to **play** (a game), jouer à ; (an
 instrument), jouer de.
please, s'il vous plaît.
to **please**, plaire.
pocket, poche, *f.*
policeman, agent de police, *m.*
poor, pauvre.
to **possess**, posséder.
pound, livre, *f.*
to **praise**, louer.
to **prefer**, préférer.
to **prepare**, préparer.
present, cadeau, *m.*
to **present**, présenter.
to **be present at**, assister à.
pretty, joli.
to **prevent**, empêcher.
priest, prêtre, *m.*
prison, prison, *f.*
prisoner, prisonnier, *m.*

privation, privation, *f.*
prize, prix, *m.*
probable, probable.
professor, professeur, *m.*
progress, progrès, *m.*
to **promise**, promettre.
proof, preuve, *f.*
to **propose**, se proposer.
proud, fier.
to **publish**, publier.
to **punish**, punir
to **put**, mettre.

Q

queen, reine, *f.*
question, question, *f.*
quickly, vite.
quiet, tranquille.
quite, tout à fait.

R

railway, chemin de fer, *m.*
rain, pluie, *f.*
to **rain**, pleuvoir.
rainbow, arc-en-ciel, *m.*
to **raise**, lever.
rare, rare.
to **read**, lire.
ready, prêt.
reason, raison, *f.*
to **receive**, recevoir.
refuge, to **take**, se réfugier.
regiment, régiment, *m.*
reign, règne, *m.*
to **rely on**, compter sur.
to **remain**, rester.
to **remember**, se rappeler, se sou-
 venir (de).
to **renounce**, renoncer (à).
to **resemble**, ressembler (à).
to **resist**, résister (à).
to **respect**, respecter.
retreat, retraite, *f.*
to **return**, retourner, revenir.
reward, récompense, *f.*
rich, riche.
river, rivière, *f.*
road, chemin, *m.*
to **roar**, rugir.

robber, voleur, *m.*
 rock, roc, *m.*
 Roman, romain.
 room, chambre, salle, *f.*
 round, rond.
 to rove, errer.
 to rub, frotter.
 to run, courir.
 to rush, se précipiter.
 Russia, Russie, *f.*
 Russian, russe.

S

sad, triste.
 sailor, matelot, *m.*
 savage, sauvage.
 scene, scène, *f.*
 school, école, *f.*
 to scream, crier.
 sea, mer, *f.*
 seat, banc, *m.*
 to see, voir.
 seldom, rarement.
 to sell, vendre.
 to send, envoyer.
 sentinel, sentinelle, *f.*
 servant, domestique, *m.* and *f.*
 to serve, servir.
 sheep, mouton, *m.*
 shepherd, berger, *m.*
 shilling, schelling, *m.*
 ship, vaisseau, *m.*
 shop, boutique, *f.* ; magasin, *m.*
 shoulder, épaule, *f.*
 to shout, crier.
 to show, montrer.
 side, côté, *m.*
 sight, vue, *f.* ; spectacle, *m.*
 silent, silencieux.
 to be silent, se taire.
 sincere, sincère.
 to sing, chanter.
 to sit, s'asseoir ; sitting, assis.
 slavery, esclavage, *m.*
 to slay, tuer.
 to sleep, dormir ; to go to sleep, s'endormir.
 the slightest, le moindre.
 slow, lent.
 smoke, fumée, *f.*

snow, neige, *f.*
 soft, mou.
 soldier, soldat, *m.*
 something, quelque chose.
 song, chanson, *f.*
 soon, bientôt.
 soul, âme, *f.* (Ex. I B, bon-homme, *m.*)
 soup, potage, *m.*
 speech, discours, *m.*
 to spend, passer.
 splendid, splendide.
 spring, printemps, *m.*
 stair, escalier, *m.*
 to stand, se tenir debout.
 to start, partir.
 station, gare *f.*
 to stay, rester.
 to steal, voler.
 to stir, bouger.
 stone, pierre, *f.*
 to stop, (s')arrêter.
 story, histoire, *f.*
 street, rue, *f.*
 to strike, frapper.
 strong, fort, solide.
 student, étudiant, *m.*
 to study, étudier.
 subject, sujet, *m.*
 such, tel ; see § 130.
 to suffer, souffrir.
 summer, été, *m.*
 summit, sommet, *m.*
 sun, soleil, *m.*
 to suppose, supposer.
 sure, sûr.
 surprised, étonné.
 sword, épée, *f.*

T

to take, prendre.
 talent, talent, *m.*
 tall, grand.
 task, tâche, *f.*
 tea-cup, tasse à thé, *f.*
 to tell, dire ; to tell (a story), raconter.
 tent, tente, *f.*
 theatre, théâtre, *m.*
 thick, épais.

- thing, chose, *f.*
 to **think**, penser, croire.
 to be **thirsty**, avoir soif.
 thought, pensée, *f.*
 threat, menace, *f.*
 to **throw**, jeter.
 till, *prep.*, jusqu'à.
 time, temps; fois; **for a long**
 time, longtemps.
 in **time**, à temps.
 tired, fatigué.
 to-day, aujourd'hui.
 to-morrow, demain.
 to **touch**, toucher.
 tower, tour, *f.*
 train, train, *m.*
 to **travel**, voyager.
 traveller, voyageur.
 tree, arbre, *m.*
 to **tremble**, trembler.
 troops, troupes, *f. plur.*
 trouble, peine, *f.*
 truth, vérité, *f.*
 to **try**, tâcher, essayer.

U

- uncle, oncle, *m.*
 to **understand**, comprendre.
 uniform, uniforme, *m.*
 urgent, urgent.
 to **use**, employer, se servir de.
 useful, utile.
 to **utter**, prononcer.

V

- vain, vain.
 to **vanish**, disparaître.
 victory, victoire, *f.*
 village, village, *m.*
 visit, visite, *f.*; **to pay a visit**
 (to), faire visite (à).
 visitor, visiteur, *m.*
 voice, voix, *f.*

W

- to **wait (for)**, attendre.
 to **walk**, marcher; se promener.
 wall, mur, *m.*
 to **want**, vouloir, désirer; avoir
 besoin de.
 war, guerre, *f.*
 warm, chaud.
 to **wash**, laver.
 watch, montre, *f.*
 water, eau, *f.*
 wave, vague, *f.*
 way, manière, façon, *f.*
 to **wear**, porter.
 week, semaine, *f.*
 to **weep**, pleurer.
 to **weigh**, peser.
 to be **well**, se porter bien.
 white, blanc.
 whole. See § 129.
 wicked, méchant.
 widow, veuve, *f.*
 wife, femme, *f.*
 to **win**, gagner, (a victory) rem-
 porter.
 wind, vent, *m.*
 window, fenêtre, *f.*
 wine, vin, *m.*
 winter, hiver, *m.*
 wise, sage, prudent.
 to **wish**, vouloir.
 wolf, loup, *m.*
 wood, bois, *m.*
 wool, laine, *f.*
 word, mot, *m.*
 work, ouvrage, travail, *m.*
 to **work**, travailler.
 to be **worth**, valoir.
 to **wound**, blesser.
 to **write**, écrire.
 writer, écrivain, *m.*
 to be **wrong**, avoir tort.

Y

- yard (= metre), mètre, *m.*
 year, an, *m.*, année, *f.*
 yesterday, hier.
 young, jeune.

INDEX

(The numbers refer to Sections)

A

À, adverbial phrases, 241, 279.
 — forms compound nouns, 33.
 — uses, 278, 279.
 — with infinitive, 216.
 About, 294.
 Above, 295.
 Absolute construction, 210, 241.
 Accents, 10.
 Across, 296.
 Adjectives, as adverbs, 240.
 — comparison of, 53-61.
 — compound, 42, 43.
 — concord of, 40.
 — contrasted with pronoun, 98.
 — demonstrative, 118.
 — feminine of, 35-37.
 — indefinite, 126-134, 137-141.
 — inflection, 41-43, 128.
 — interrogative, 108.
 — objective use, 105.
 — of colour, 43, 44.
 — of nationality, 2, 44.
 — past participle as, 206.
 — plural of, 24.
 — position of, 44-46.
 — possessive, 99-106.
 — present participles as, 202.
 — repetition, 102.
 Adverb, 236-276.
 — comparison, 242.
 — contrasted with prep., etc., 293.
 — formation, 237, 238.
 — of quantity, 17, 251.
 — position, 276.
 — relative, 114.
 Affirmation, 267, 268, 274.
À fin de, 221.
 After, 224, 297.

Again, 262.
 Against, 298.
 Age, 73.
 Agent, 187, 280.
À la, 241.
Aller, 79, 182, 183.
 Along, 299.
Alors, 260.
 Alphabet, 1.
 Among, 300.
Amour, 52.
 Animals, feminine of, 39.
 Another, 137.
 Any, 13, 141.
 Anyhow, Anything, 141.
 Apostrophe, 7, 8.
 Apposition, 20.
Après, 224.
 Article, 11-23.
 — omission, etc., 19-23.
 — repetition, 18.
 — with parts of body, 19, 104.
 — with proper nouns, 19, 22.
 — with superlative, 59.
 — with titles, 19.
 As, 246, 249.
Assés, 17.
 At, 301.
Attendu, 210.
Aucun, 127.
Auprès de, 290.
Autant, 17, 254.
Autre, 134-137.
Autre chose, 139.
Autres, 94.
Autrui, 136.
 Auxiliaries, conjugation, 148.
 — English, 184, 185.
 — of mood, 184-186.
 — of tense, 182, 183.
 Auxiliary Verbs, 179-190.

Avant, 281.
Avant de, 220.
Avec, 20, 280.
Avoir, conjugated, 148.
 — auxiliary verb, 179, 180.
 — idioms, 21, 181.

B

Beau, belle, 36.
Beaucoup, 17, 252.
 Before, 302.
 Behind, 303.
 Below, 304.
 Beneath, 305.
 Beside, 306.
Bestiaux, Bétail, 24.
 Between, 307.
 Beyond, 308.
Bien, 17, 239, 244.
Billion, 69.
 Body, parts of, 19, 104.
 Both . . . and, 332.
Bouger, 275.
 By, 309.

C

Ca, 121.
Can, 184, 185.
 Capital letters, 2, 10.
 Cardinal numbers, 62-77.
 Causative verbs, 187.
Ce, 119, 122-125.
 — elision, 8.
 — repetition, 111.
Ceci, 119, 121.
 — with adjective, 17.
Cedilla, 4, 172.
Cela, 119, 121.
 — impersonal construction, 124, 125.
 — with adjective, 17.
Celle, celui, 119.
Celui-ci, etc., 120.
Cent, 66, 68.
Ce que, Ce qui, with adj., 17.
 -cer, verbs in, 172.
Cesser, 275.
C'est, 119, 122-125.

Chacun, Chaque, 131.
Chez, 282.
Chose, 52, 139.
Ci, in compounds, 118, 119, 258.
Ci-inclus, 210.
 Collective numbers, 76.
 Colour, adjectives of, 43, 44.
Combien, 17, 210, 250.
Comme, 246, 250.
 Comparative Sentences, 274.
 Comparison of adjectives, 53-61.
 — of adverbs, 242.
 Compass, points of, 2, 71.
 Compound adjectives, 42, 43.
 Compound nouns, 31-34.
 — tenses, 150, 163, 179, 180, 200.
 Concord of adjective, 40.
 Conditional, 186, 197, 199.
 Conjugation, 146.
 — auxiliaries, 148.
 — compound tenses, 150, 163, 200.
 — formation of tenses, 147.
 — interrogative, 151-154.
 — irregular, 235.
 — negative, 151, 153.
 — passive, 155.
 — peculiarities, 171-178.
 — reflexive, 158-162.
 — regular, 149.
 Conjunction, 231, 329-336.
 — contrasted with adverb, etc., 293.
 — with subjunctive, 231, 329.
 Conjunctive pronoun, 78-93, 188.
 Construction with verbs, 338.
 Contraction, prep. and article, 11.
Convenir, 180.
 Countries, 22, 50, 278.
Couru, Coulté, 210.
Crû, crue, 35.

D

D, liaison, 9.
Dans and en, 278.
 Date, 67, 71.
Davantage, 253.
 Days of week, 2, 71.
De, elision, 8.
 — forms compound nouns, 33, 34.

De partitive, 13-18.
 — use, 279, 280.
 — with infinitive, 215.
De façon que, 231.
 Definite article, see Article.
Délice, 52.
Demander, 216.
De manière que, 231.
Demi, 41.
 Demonstratives, 118-125.
Depuis, 193, 274, 283.
Dès, 283.
Descendre, 180.
De sorte que, 231.
Dessous, *Dessus*, 257, 289.
Devant, 281.
Devoir, 79, 184, 186.
 Diæresis, 5.
 Disjunctives, 78, 94-97, 113.
Donc, 260.
Dont, 110.
Dormir, 210.
 Down, 310.
Dû, due, 35.
Durant, 284.

E

Échapper, 180.
 -*er*, verbs in, 177.
 Either . . . or, 332.
 -*eler*, verbs in, 173.
 Elision, 7, 8, 84, 107.
En, preposition, 22, 278.
 — — forms compound nouns,
 33.
 — — with gerund, 201.
 — pronoun, 88, 92, 93.
Encore, 17, 137, 154, 262.
 English auxiliaries, 184, 185.
Ensuite, 260.
Entendre, 189, 211.
Entre, 8, 109, 285.
Envers, 291.
Envoyer, 79.
 -*er*, peculiarities of verbs in, 171-
 177.
Ês, 11.
Est-ce que, 154.
Et, 9.
Êté, 210.

-*eter*, verbs in, 173.
Être, conjugated, 148.
 — forms compound tenses, 179,
 180.
 — idioms, 181.
 — omission of article, 20.
Eu, 210.
 -*eur*, 35, 38.
Excepté, 210.
Expirer, 180.

F

F, liaison, 9.
Faire, with infinitive, 187-191, 211.
 — of weather, 191.
Fait, 210, 211.
 Fearing, verbs of, 229, 274.
 Feminine, formation of 35-39, 41-43.
Feu, 24, 41.
 For, 311.
 Foreign nouns, 25.
Foudre, 52.
 Fractions, 77.
Franc, 41.
 From, 312.
 Future, 196, 197.

G

G, liaison, 9.
Garde, 31.
 Gender, geographical names, 50.
 — names of animals, 39.
 — nouns, 47-52.
Gens, 52.
 Geographical names, 22, 50, 278.
 -*ger*, verbs in, 154, 171.
 Gerund, 200, 201.
Get, 184.
Grand'mère, etc., 8, 31.

H

H, aspirate and mute, 7.
Haut, 41.
 Height, 74.
 Historic infinitive, 215.
 — present, 193.

170 THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

How, 114, 250.
However, 140.
Hyphen, 6, 63.

I

Ici, in compounds, 258.
-ier, verbs in, 177.
Il, omission, 169.
Il y a, 170.
Imperative, 81, 162.
Imperfect, uses of, 193, 195, 197.
Impersonal construction, 124.
— verbs, 167-170.
— with subjunctive, 230.
In, 58, 313.
Indeclinable words, 25, 31.
Indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 126-141.
Infinitive, 212-225.
— for -ing, 203.
— with *faire*, 187-189.
-ing, 200, 203.
Instrument, 280.
Interjection, 337.
Interrogative conjugation, 80, 152-154.
— pronouns and adjectives, 107-117.
Into, 313.
Intransitive verbs, 157, 180.
Inversion, 116, 152-154, 271.
Irregular Verbs, 235.
-issime, superlatives in, 54.
It, 83.

J

Jamais, 20, 269, 272.
Je, 2, 8.
Jusqu'à, 217, 286.
Jusqu'à ce que, 231.
Jusque, 8, 286.

L

Là, in compounds, 118, 119, 258.
Laisser, 186, 189, 211.
Late, 263.

Le, la, les, contraction, 11.
— elision, 8.
— idiomatic, 88.
Lequel, 107, 109, 110.
Less than, before numeral, 56.
Letters, small and capital, 2, 10.
Leur, 99.
Liaison, 9.
Lorsque, 8, 330.

M

Maint, 132.
Make, to, 190.
Many, 252.
Marché, 210.
May, 184.
Me, elision, 8.
Measure, 74.
Même, 138, 247.
Mi-, 52.
Mieux, 239.
Might, 184.
Mil, Mille, 67, 68.
Milliard, Millier, Million, 69, 76.
Moi, for *me*, 81.
Moins, 17.
Mol, 36.
Mon, for *ma*, 100.
Months, 2, 71.
Mood, 143, 199, 212-234.
More, 56, 57.
Most, 60, 252.
Motion, verbs of, 96, 179, 213.
Mû, Mue, 35.
Much, 252.
Must, 184.

N

N, liaison, 9.
Ne, elision, 8.
— without *pas*, 274, 275.
Near, 314.
Negation, 267-275.
Negative, conjugation, 151, 153.
— phrases, 273.
— position with infinitive, 270.
Neither . . . nor, 332.
Neuter verb rendered by reflexive, 165, 166.

Next, 314.
 No, 269.
 Nor, 332.
 Not, 269.
 Not till, 334.
 Nouns, compound, 31, 33.
 — feminine of, 35-39, 41-43.
 — foreign, 25.
 — gender of, 47-52.
 — of quantity, 17.
 — plural of, 24-32.
Nouvel, 36.
Nu, 41.
 Numerals, 62-77.

O

O'clock, 72.
Ouvre, 52.
 Of, 315.
 Off, 316.
 Omission of article, 20-23.
 — *il*, 169.
 — *pas*, 274, 275.
On, 128.
On, 317.
Onze, *onzième*, 8.
Or, 260.
 Order of pronouns, 82.
 Ordinal numbers, 62-77.
Orgue, 52.
 Orthographical signs, 1-10.
Oser, 275.
Où, 114, 256.
Ouate, 8.
 Ought, 184.
Oui, 8.
 Out, 318.
 Over, 319.

P

Pâque, 52.
Par, idioms, 20, 23, 280.
 — with infinitive, 219.
Parce que, 333.
Parmi, 109, 285.
 Participle, as adj., concord, 40.
 Participle, position, 44.

Participle, present, 200-205, 225.
 — past, 206-211.
 Partitive article, 13-18.
Pas, omission, 274, 275.
 — requires complement, 269.
Pasé, 210.
 Passive voice, 155-157, 165.
 Past Anterior, 198.
 Past Definite, 195.
Pendant, 287.
Pendant que, 335.
 Perfect, 194.
 Periphrastic tenses, 192.
 Personal pronoun, 78-97, 188.
Personne, 52, 127.
 — without *ne*, 269.
Pesé, 210.
Peu, *un peu*, 17, 245.
Peut-être, 154, 271.
Plein, 41.
Plupart, *la*, 17, 252.
 Plural, 24-32, 40-43.
Plus, 17, 253.
Plusieurs, 132.
 Polite address, 78.
 Position of adjective, 44-46.
 — adverb, 276.
 — negative, 151, 270.
 — pronoun, 79-81, 85, 188.
 Possessive adjective and pronoun,
 99-106.
Possible, 41.
Pour, idioms, 287.
 — with infinitive, 222.
Pouvoir, 79, 185, 186, 275.
 Prepositions, 277-328.
 — contrasted with adv. and conj.,
 293.
 — English, idioms, 294-328.
 — repetition, 292.
 — with infinitive, 212-224.
Près de, 218, 290.
 Present tense, uses, 193, 197.
Presque, 8.
Prétendu, 44.
 Pronoun, contrasted with adj., 98.
 — demonstrative, 119-125.
 — indefinite, 126-128.
 — interrogative, 107-114, 117.
 — personal, 78-97, 188.
 — position, 79-81, 85, 188.
 — possessive, 99.

Pronoun, reflexive, 86, 87, 97, 164, 188.

Proper names, 19, 22, 25.

Propre, 104.

Proverbs, omission of article, 20.

Puisque, 8.

Punctuation, 3.

Q

Quand, 9, 114, 330.

— with conditional, 199.

— with future, 196.

Quantity, adverbs of, 17, 251.

— nouns of, 17.

Que, 8, 17.

— conjunction, 229, 336.

— *ne*, 275.

— pleonastic, 215, 336.

Quel, 20, 108, 110.

Quelconque, 133.

Quelque, 8, 139.

Quelque chose, 17, 52, 139.

Quoi, 17, 111-113.

Quoique, quoi que, 8, 333.

R

Re-, 262.

Reciprocal pronouns, 87, 164.

Reflexive pronouns, 86, 87, 97, 164, 188.

Reflexive verbs, 96, 156, 158-166, 209.

Regarder, 189, 211.

Regular verbs, 149.

Relative adverb, 114.

— pronoun, 107-117.

Rendre, 190.

Repetition, adjective, 102.

— object, 90.

— preposition, 292.

Retarder, 263.

Rien, 17, 127.

— without *ne*, 269.

S

S, liaison, 9.

Saints' days, 52.

Sans, 20, 223, 288.

Savoir, 185, 186, 275.

Se, elision, 8.

Seasons, 2, 71.

Second, 65.

Sentir, 189, 211.

Sequence of tenses, 233.

Servi, 210.

Shall, Should, 184.

Si, adverb, 268.

— conjunction, 8, 53, 197, 231, 331.

Since, 320.

Small initial letter, 2.

So, 248.

Soi, 97.

Soi-disant, 44.

Some, 13, 141.

Somehow, Something, 141.

Son, etc., 100, 101.

Soon, 264.

Soudain, 240.

Subjunctive, 226-234.

— for conditional, 199, 232.

— with superlative, 59, 227.

Superlative, 54, 55, 58-61, 227.

Syllabication, 6.

T

T, euphonic, 9.

Tandis que, 335.

Tant, 254.

Tantôt, 265.

Tard, 263.

Te, elision, 8.

Tel, 130.

Témoin, 30.

Tense, auxiliaries of, 182, 183.

Tenses, 144, 192-199.

— compound, 150.

— formation of, 147.

— sequence of, 233.

Then, 260.

Through, 321.

Till, 322, 334.

Time, idioms, 72, 75, 266

Titles, 19, 70.

To, 323.

Toi, for *te*, 81.

Ton, for *ta*, 100.

Toujours, 261.

Tout, 129.
 Towards, 324.
 Towns, names of, 22, 278.
Travers, 280.
Trillion, 69.
Trop, 17, 222.
Tu, use of, 78.

U

Uhlan, no elision with, 8.
 Under, 326.
Unième, 64.
 Until, 322.
 Up, 325.
 Upon, 317.

V

Valu, *Vécu*, 210.
Venir, 79, 182, 183.
 Verb, 142-235.
 — auxiliary, 148, 179-190.
 — causative, 187.
 — conjugations, 146.
 — formation, 146.
 — impersonal, 167-170.
 — interrogative, 152-154.
 — irregular, 235.
 — moods, 143, 199, 212-234.
 — negative, 151, 153.
 — participles, 143, 200-211.
 — passive voice, 155-157, 165.
 — peculiarities, 171-178.
 — reflexive, 96, 156, 158-166, 209.
 — regular, 149.
 — tenses, 144, 147, 192-199.

Verb, voices, 145.
 Verbal nouns, 203, 213.
 Verbs, construction with, 338.
Vers, 291.
Vieil, 36.
Vingt, 66.
Vite, 240.
 Vocative, 19.
 Voices of verbs, 145.
Voici, *voilà*, 85, 170.
Voir, 189, 211.
Vouloir, 79, 184, 186.
Vous and *Tu*, 78.
Vu, 210.

W

W, 1.
 Week, days of, 2, 71.
 What, 111.
 Whatever, 140.
 Whether, 331.
 Which, 112.
 Whose, 110.
 Will, 184.
 With, 327.
 Within, 328.

X

X, liaison, 9.

Y

Y, 78, 92.
Yacht, no elision with, 8.
Y-compris, 210.
 -*yer*, verbs in, 176.
Yes, 268.

Harrap's Modern Language Series

Including the Publications of D. C. Heath & Co.

The publications in this List represent the best features of the latest developments. They are used in the leading schools, and are held in the highest esteem by teachers who believe in a wise admixture of the new with the old.

A Complete List will be sent on application.

FRENCH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION

Heath's Practical French Grammar. By W. H. FRASER, B.A., and J. SQUAIR, B.A. With Exercises and Vocabularies. Section I, 2s. 6d.; Section II, 3s.; Complete, 512 pp., 4s. 6d. Key, 5s. 3d. net.

Heath's New Practical French Grammar. By W. H. FRASER, B.A., and J. SQUAIR, B.A. With Exercises and Vocabularies. Section I, 3s.; Complete, 592 pp., 5s. Key, 5s. 3d. net.

Heath's Modern French Grammar. By W. H. FRASER, B.A., and J. SQUAIR, B.A. With Exercises and Vocabularies. Section I, 2s.; Section II, 2s.; Complete, 352 pp., 3s. 6d. Key, 5s. 3d. net.

Extracts for Composition in French. Edited by J. E. MANSION, B.-ès-L. With or without Vocabulary. 160 pp., 2s. 6d. Key, 3s. 9d. net.

Alternative Extracts for Composition in French. Edited, with Vocabulary, by J. E. MANSION, B.-ès-L. 160 pp., 2s. 6d. Key, 3s. 9d. net.

A Grammar of Present-day French. By J. E. MANSION, B.-ès-L. With Full Index. 248 pp., 3s. 6d.

Essentials of French Grammar. By C. W. Bell, M.A. With Exercises and Vocabulary. 174 pp., 2s. 6d. Key, 2s. 8d. net.

Exercises in French Syntax. Founded upon *A Grammar of Present-day French*, by J. E. MANSION, B.-ès-L. With Vocabulary. 152 pp., 2s.

First-year French for Adults. By H. D. HARGREAVES, B.A. With Complete Vocabularies. 124 pp., 1s. 6d.

Second-year French for Adults. By H. D. HARGREAVES, B.A. With Complete Vocabularies. 176 pp., 2s.

A First Year of French for Young Beginners. By J. E. MANSION, B.-ès-L. New Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and Illustrated. With Vocabulary. 152 pp. 1s. 9d.

French Prose for Early Stages. By PETER L. MURPHY, B.A. With Grammatical Introduction and Vocabulary. 96 pp., 1s. 6d.

Mes Premiers Pas en Français. By M. L. CHAPUZET and W. M. DANIELS, D.Litt. Illustrated. 128 pp. Without Vocabulary, 1s. 6d. With Vocabulary, 1s. 9d.

Nouveaux Pas en Français. By M. L. CHAPUZET and W. M. DANIELS, D.Litt. Illustrated. 256 pp. Without Vocabulary, 2s. 3d. With Vocabulary, 2s. 6d.

Selections for Sight Translation. 1. Easy, 6d. 2. Medium, 8d. 3. Advanced, 8d.

French Accidence and Syntax, Vocabulary and Idioms. By JAMES P. PRIOR. 208 pp., 3s. 6d.

Progressive French Idioms. Compiled by R. DE BLANCHAUD, L.-ès-L. A Classified List of Phrases in Current Use. 128 pp., 1s. 6d.

One Hundred Exercises in French Conversation and Composition. Based on *Progressive French Idioms*, by R. DE BLANCHAUD, L.-ès-L. 64 pp., 8d. Key, 2s. 3d. net.

Exercises on French Irregular Verbs. By E. BOURDACHE. With Exercises, Lists of Idioms, and Vocabulary. 152 pp., 2s. 3d.

A Text-book of Free Composition in French. By H. J. B. WANSTALL, M.A. Illustrated. 118 pp., 2s.

GEORGE G. HARRAP & CO. LTD., 39-41 Parker Street, Kingsway W.C.2

Harrap's Shorter French Texts

General Editor—J. E. MANSION, B.-ès-L.

With Exercises, Notes, Vocabularies, etc. The volumes in general contain 64 pages. Price 6d., limp cloth.

Series A. *Very Easy.* With Vocabulary.

Choix de Contes Populaires de la Haute-Bretagne, par P. SÉBILLOT.
Contes des Marins de la Haute-Bretagne, par PAUL SÉBILLOT.
La Belle au Bois dormant, par EMMA FISHER.
Deux Comédies enfantines, par MATHILDE REICHENBACH.
La Journée d'un petit Lycéen, par A. AUZAS. Illustrated.
Cinquante petites Lettres en Français, par L. J. WEISGERBER.

Series B. *Easy.* With Vocabulary.

Le Château de la Vie, par E. LABOULAYE.
Michel Perrin, par Mme DE BAWR.
Mon Etoile, par SCRIBE. 8d.
Le Médecin malgré lui, par MOLIERE.
Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme, par MOLIERE. Abridged.
Les petites Ignorances de la Conversation, par CH. ROZAN.
Anecdotes sur Napoléon, par M. DE ST HILAIRE.
Quatre Contes des Mille et une Nuits.
Choix de Poésies faciles. Edited by W. M. DANIELS, D.Litt.
Contes du Petit Château, par J. MACÉ. 96 pages. 8d.
Contes de ma Jeunesse, par L. LAILAVOIX, L.-ès-L.
La Farce de Paquin fils, par L. LAILAVOIX, L.-ès-L.
Le Docteur Bousseau, par PAUL FÉVAL. 96 pages. 8d.

Series C. *Intermediate.* With Vocabulary.

Le Trésor du Vieux Seigneur, par ERCKMANN-CHATRIAN.
Récits tirés des Impressions de Voyage d'Alexandre Dumas.
Croisilles, par ALFRED DE MUSSET.
Contes à ma Sœur, par H. MOREAU.
Poèmes Napoléoniens. Edited by A. AUZAS.
Gringoire, par TH. DE BANVILLE. 96 pages. 8d.
Les Précieuses Ridicules, par MOLIERE. 96 pages. 8d.
La Révolution. Edited by W. M. DANIELS, D.Litt. 96 pages. 8d.
Une Insurrection à Paris (Les Misérables), par V. HUGO. 96 pp. 8d.

Series D. *Intermediate and Advanced.* No Vocabularies.

L'Avocat Patelin, par BRUEYS. Abridged.
L'Avare, par MOLIERE. Abridged. 96 pages. 8d.
Les Jumeaux de l'Hôtel Corneille, par ED. ABOUT.
L'Evasion (Vingt Ans Après), par A. DUMAS.
Waterloo (Extrait des Misérables), par V. HUGO.
La Littérature Anglaise (Pages Choiesies), par TAINÉ. 96 pp. 8d.

N.B.—Fuller particulars of these Texts will be found in our new Special List of Books on Modern Languages.

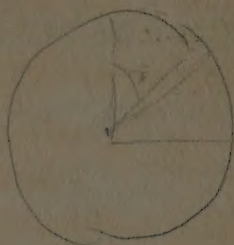
GEORGE G. HARRAP & CO. LTD., 39-41 Parker St., Kingsway, W.C.2

(1) All Conjunctions before the verb
Disjunctive as in English

(2) Order of Conjunctions if more than 1

1 2 3 A D + y + en

3 Exception Pronouns follow
in the Imperative AFFIRMATIVE

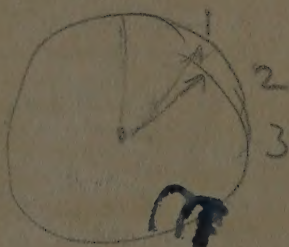


$$x + \frac{x}{12} = 15$$

$$\frac{13x}{12} = 15$$

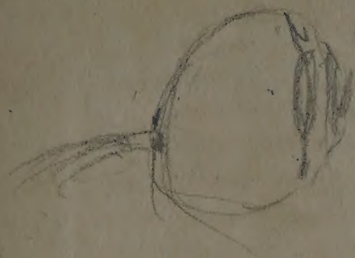
$$13x = 180$$

$$x = 13$$



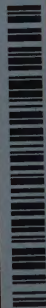
$$x + \frac{x}{12} = 5$$

$$\frac{13x}{12} = 5 \quad 13x = 60$$



x

M. Jagg.



 **KT-566-544**